



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 633

16 March  
Maart 2018

No. 41498

**PART 1 OF 3**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**



For purposes of reference, all Proclamations, Government Notices, General Notices and Board Notices published are included in the following table of contents which thus forms a weekly index. Let yourself be guided by the gazette numbers in the righthand column:

### Weekly Index

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICE</b>		
<b>Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of</b>		
152 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of the Act in Franshoek, Klappmuts, Lamotte, Lyndoch, Priellanquedockylemore, Raithby, Wemmershoek and Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch Local Municipality–Western Cape .....	16	41473
153 Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Various Properties .....	18	41473
154 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the City of Cape Town Metro Municipality–Western Cape Province .....	19	41473
155 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Abbotsdale, Moreesburg, Ongegund, Riebeeckkasteel and Yzerfontein, Swartland Local Municipality – Western Cape Province .....	22	41473
156 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the KwaDukuza Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	23	41473
157 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Umswathi Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	24	41473
158 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Richmond and Impendle Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	25	41473
159 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act: Notice for public .....	26	41473
160 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the City of Matlosana Local Municipality, North West Province and Makhado Local Municipality, Limpopo Province .....	28	41473
161 Marketing of Agricultural Products Act (47/1996) :Request for the continuation of statutory measures relating to levies, registration and records & returns in the Red Meat industry in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act.....	29	41473

Alle Proklamasies, Goewermentskennisgewings, Algemene Kennisgewings en Raadskennisgewings gepubliseer, word vir verwysingsdoeleindes in die volgende Inhoudopgawe ingesluit wat dus weeklikse indeks voorstel. Laat self deur die Koerantnommers in die regterhandse kolom lei:

### Weeklikse Indeks

No.	Bladsy No.	Koerant No.
<b>GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Landbou, Bosbou en Visserye, Departement van</b>		
152 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of the Act in Franshoek, Klappmuts, Lamotte, Lyndoch, Priellanquedockylemore, Raithby, Wemmershoek and Stellenbosch, Stellenbosch Local Municipality–Western Cape .....	16	41473
153 Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Various Properties .....	18	41473
154 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the City of Cape Town Metro Municipality–Western Cape Province .....	19	41473
155 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Abbotsdale, Moreesburg, Ongegund, Riebeeckkasteel and Yzerfontein, Swartland Local Municipality – Western Cape Province .....	22	41473
156 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the KwaDukuza Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	23	41473
157 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Umswathi Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	24	41473
158 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the Richmond and Impendle Municipality, KwaZulu-Natal Province .....	25	41473
159 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act: Notice for public .....	26	41473
160 Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (70/1970) :Exclusion of certain properties from the provisions of the subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, in the City of Matlosana Local Municipality, North West Province and Makhado Local Municipality, Limpopo Province .....	28	41473
161 Marketing of Agricultural Products Act (47/1996) :Request for the continuation of statutory measures relating to levies, registration and records & returns in the Red Meat industry in terms of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act.....	29	41473

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>Energy, Department of</b>			<b>Energie, Departement van</b>		
R.193 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Regulations in respect of the single maximum national retail price for illuminating paraffin.....	3	41482	R.193 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Regulations in respect of the single maximum national retail price for illuminating paraffin.....	3	41482
R.194 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Amendment of the regulations in respect of petroleum products.....	4	41482	R.194 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Amendment of the regulations in respect of petroleum products.....	4	41482
R.195 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Maximum Retail Price for Liquefied Petroleum Gas.....	6	41482	R.195 Petroleum Products Act (120/1977) :Maximum Retail Price for Liquefied Petroleum Gas.....	6	41482
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of</b>			<b>Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>		
162 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Consultation on the Generic Environmental Management Programme applicable to an application for overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure for which an environmental authorisation is required .....	34	41473	162 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Consultation on the Generic Environmental Management Programme applicable to an application for overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure for which an environmental authorisation is required .....	34	41473
163 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Notice of intention to publish the Generic Environmental Management Programme for the Substation development and expansion .....	101	41473	163 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Notice of intention to publish the Generic Environmental Management Programme for the Substation development and expansion .....	101	41473
164 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Publication of Gauteng Provincial Environmental Management Framework Standard, 2018 and Appendices .....	167	41473	164 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Publication of Gauteng Provincial Environmental Management Framework Standard, 2018 and Appendices .....	167	41473
R.196 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Approval of fees for application registration, lodging of appeals and annual fees for registered candidate environmental assessment practitioners and registered environmental assessment practitioners, as set out in the Schedule hereto .....	4	41485	R.196 National Environmental Management Act (107/1998) :Approval of fees for application registration, lodging of appeals and annual fees for registered candidate environmental assessment practitioners and registered environmental assessment practitioners, as set out in the Schedule hereto .....	4	41485
<b>Health, Department of</b>			<b>Gesondheid, Departement van</b>		
R.190 Nursing Act (33/2005) :South African Nursing Council: Notice in terms of the section 4 (1) (h) regarding details of persons against whom disciplinary Action was taken in terms of the Nursing Act .....	11	41474	R.190 Nursing Act (33/2005) :South African Nursing Council: Notice in terms of the section 4 (1) (h) regarding details of persons against whom disciplinary Action was taken in terms of the Nursing Act .....	11	41474
<b>Higher Education and Training, Department of</b>			<b>Hoër Onderwys en Opleiding, Departement van</b>		
165 Higher Education Act (101/1997) :Minimum Admission requirements for Higher Certificate, Diploma and Bachelor's Degree programmes for holders of the Senior Certificate (amended) and the revocation of designated list of subjects .....	213	41473	165 Higher Education Act (101/1997) :Minimum Admission requirements for Higher Certificate, Diploma and Bachelor's Degree programmes for holders of the Senior Certificate (amended) and the revocation of designated list of subjects .....	213	41473
166 National Qualifications Framework Act (67/2008) :Call for nominations of a member from the Organised Labour for appointment to the Board of the South African Qualifications Authority .....	217	41473	166 National Qualifications Framework Act (67/2008) :Call for nominations of a member from the Organised Labour for appointment to the Board of the South African Qualifications Authority .....	217	41473
<b>Independent Communications Authority of South Africa</b>			<b>Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika</b>		
191 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa :Public hearings in respect of the draft number portability regulations ....	4	41477	191 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa :Public hearings in respect of the draft number portability regulations ....	4	41477

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of</b>			<b>Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>		
167 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :Belvedere 362 KT .....	221	41473	167 Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994) :Belvedere 362 KT .....	221	41473
<b>South African Revenue Service</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Inkomstediens</b>		
168 Vierde Bylae by die Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962) :Kennisgewing uitgevaardig ingevolge Paragraaf 14(3)(a) van die Vierde Bylae by die Wet .....	225	41473	168 Vierde Bylae by die Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962) :Kennisgewing uitgevaardig ingevolge Paragraaf 14(3)(a) van die Vierde Bylae by die Wet .....	226	41473
169 Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962) :Bepaling van dagtoelae ten opsigte van etes en toevallige uitgawes vir doeleindes van artikel 8(1) van die Wet .....	229	41473	169 Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962) :Bepaling van dagtoelae ten opsigte van etes en toevallige uitgawes vir doeleindes van artikel 8(1) van die Wet .....	236	41473
170 Income Tax Act (58/1962) :Rate per kilometre fixed under section 8 (1) (b) (ii) and (iii) of the Act.....	259	41473	170 Inkomstebelastingwet (58/1962) :Skaal per kilometer vasgestel ingevolge artikel 8 (10 (b) (ii) en (iii) van die Wet.....	262	41473
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of</b>			<b>Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>		
171 The Sugar Industry Agreement, 2000 :Notice under clause 82 of the Sugar Industry Agreement, 2000 .....	271	41473	171 The Sugar Industry Agreement, 2000 :Notice under clause 82 of the Sugar Industry Agreement, 2000 .....	271	41473
172 National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications Act (5/2008), as amended through the Legal Metrology Act (9/2014) :The proposed compulsory specification for polymer film for damp-proofing and waterproofing in buildings.....	275	41473	172 National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications Act (5/2008), as amended through the Legal Metrology Act (9/2014) :The proposed compulsory specification for polymer film for damp-proofing and waterproofing in buildings .....	275	41473
173 National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications Act (5/2008) as amended through the Legal Metrology Act (9/2014) :Amendment to the Compulsory Specification for Hydraulic Brake and Clutch Fluid-VC8013.	284	41473	173 National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications Act (5/2008) as amended through the Legal Metrology Act (9/2014) :Amendment to the Compulsory Specification for Hydraulic Brake and Clutch Fluid-VC8013.	284	41473
174 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	292	41473	174 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	292	41473
175 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	293	41473	175 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	293	41473
176 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	294	41473	176 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	294	41473
177 Companies Act (3/2011) :Reporting of Annual Financial Statements (AFS) to be lodged using Extensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) as from 1 July 2018, Annual Financial Statements in PDF are Discontinued.....	295	41473	177 Companies Act (3/2011) :Reporting of Annual Financial Statements (AFS) to be lodged using Extensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL) as from 1 July 2018, Annual Financial Statements in PDF are Discontinued.....	295	41473
178 Companies Act, 2008 :Practice Notice 6 of 2011 (revised): Detail required for registration of external companies.....	296	41473	178 Companies Act, 2008 :Practice Notice 6 of 2011 (revised): Detail required for registration of external companies.....	296	41473
179 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the public to comment on the prohibition on the use of the ZA Cap logo .....	297	41473	179 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the public to comment on the prohibition on the use of the ZA Cap logo .....	297	41473
180 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the Public to comment on the Prohibition on the Use of the South African Airways Logo .....	299	41473	180 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the Public to comment on the Prohibition on the Use of the South African Airways Logo .....	299	41473
181 Companies Act (17/2008) :Notice of Introduction of New Online Filing Method for Changes of Authorised Shares as per Form COR15.2 .....	301	41473	181 Companies Act (17/2008) :Notice of Introduction of New Online Filing Method for Changes of Authorised Shares as per Form COR15.2 .....	301	41473

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
182 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	302	41473	182 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	302	41473
183 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives to be Struck from the Register .....	303	41473	183 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives to be Struck from the Register .....	303	41473
184 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	304	41473	184 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	304	41473
185 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck from the register .....	305	41473	185 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives to be struck from the register .....	305	41473
186 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	306	41473	186 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-operatives that have been removed from the register	306	41473
187 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the Public to Comment on the Prohibition on the Use of the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality Logo .....	307	41473	187 Merchandise Marks Act (17/1941) :Invitation for the Public to Comment on the Prohibition on the Use of the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality Logo .....	307	41473
188 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	309	41473	188 Co-operatives Act, 2005 :Co-Operatives that have been removed from the Register .....	309	41473
<b>Transport, Department of</b>			<b>Vervoer, Departement van</b>		
192 Department of Transport :Notification of the development of a Roads Policy for South Africa .....	4	41479	192 Department of Transport :Notification of the development of a Roads Policy for South Africa .....	4	41479
<b>Water and Sanitation, Department of</b>			<b>Water en Sanitasie, Departement van</b>		
189 National Water Act (36/1998) :Reserve determination of water resources for the Olifants-Doorn Catchments .....	310	41473	189 National Water Act (36/1998) :Reserve determination of water resources for the Olifants-Doorn Catchments .....	356	41473
<b>GENERAL NOTICE</b>			<b>ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS</b>		
<b>Energy, Department of</b>			<b>Energie, Departement van</b>		
92 National Nuclear Regulator Act (47/1999) :Notice in terms of section 28 of the Act, on fees for Nuclear Authorisations .....	452	41473	92 National Nuclear Regulator Act (47/1999) :Notice in terms of section 28 of the Act, on fees for Nuclear Authorisations .....	452	41473
<b>Health, Department of</b>			<b>Gesondheid, Departement van</b>		
93 Wet op Mediese Skemas (131/1998) :Raad van Mediese Skemas .....	454	41473	93 Wet op Mediese Skemas (131/1998) :Raad van Mediese Skemas .....	454	41473
<b>Independent Communications Authority of South Africa</b>			<b>Onafhanklike Kommunikasie-owerheid van Suid-Afrika</b>		
94 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) :Expiry of Individual Electronic Communications Network Services (I-ECNS) and Individual Electronic Communications Services (I-ECS) Licences issued to Blue IQ Investment Holdings	459	41473	94 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA) :Expiry of Individual Electronic Communications Network Services (I-ECNS) and Individual Electronic Communications Services (I-ECS) Licences issued to Blue IQ Investment Holdings .....	459	41473
<b>Justice and Constitutional Development, Department of</b>			<b>Justisie en Staatskundige Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>		
100 Constitution of the Republic of South Africa :Publication of general notice on extension of time for submission of comments .	4	41481	100 Constitution of the Republic of South Africa :Publication of general notice on extension of time for submission of comments .	4	41481
<b>Parliament of the Republic of South Africa</b>			<b>Parlement van die Republiek van Suid-Afrika</b>		
101 Electoral Act (Act 73 of 1998) :Publication of reviewed lists of candidates .....	4	41484	101 Kieswet (Wet 73 van 1998) :Publikasie van hersiene lyste van candidate .....	5	41484
102 Electoral Act (Act 73 of 1998) :Publication of reviewed lists of candidates .....	6	41484	102 Kieswet (Wet 73 van 1998) :Publikasie van hersiene lyste van candidate .....	6	41484

No.	Page No.	Gazette No.	No.	Page No.	Gazette No.
<b>South African Reserve Bank</b>			<b>Suid-Afrikaanse Reserwebank</b>		
98 South African Reserve Bank (90/1989) :The Dimension of, Design for, and Com- pilation of The Year 2018 Coin Series: Nel- son Mandela Centenary Celebration .....	4	41478	98 South African Reserve Bank (90/1989) :The Dimension of, Design for, and Com- pilation of The Year 2018 Coin Series: Nel- son Mandela Centenary Celebration .....	4	41478
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of</b>			<b>Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>		
90 Liquor Act, (27 /1989) :Notice of applica- tion for liquor licenses: Limpopo .....	27	41472	90 Drankwet, (27 /1989) :Kennisgewing van aansoeke om dranklisensies: Limpopo.....	27	41472
91 Liquor Act, (27 /1989) :Notice of applica- tions for the removal of licenses: North West .....	41	41472	91 Drankwet, (27 /1989) :Kennisgewing van aansoek om die verplasing van Lisensies: Noordwes .....	41	41472
95 Income Tax Act (58/1062) as amended :Section 12I Tax Allowance Programme....	461	41473	95 Income Tax Act (58/1062) as amended :Section 12I Tax Allowance Programme....	461	41473
<b>Transport, Department of</b>			<b>Vervoer, Departement van</b>		
99 Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) (46/1998) :Intention to appoint persons to serve on the Board of the Road Traffic Infringement Agency .....	4	41480	99 Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO) (46/1998) :Intention to appoint persons to serve on the Board of the Road Traffic Infringement Agency .....	4	41480
<b>BOARD NOTICE</b>			<b>RAADSKENNISGEWINGS</b>		
27 Health Professions Act (56/1974) :Health Professions Council of South Africa pre- scribe the annual fees payable by regis- tered practitioners .....	463	41473	27 Health Professions Act (56/1974) :Health Professions Council of South Africa pre- scribe the annual fees payable by regis- tered practitioners .....	463	41473
28 Agricultural Produce Agents Act (12/1992) :Rules in respect of Livestock Agents .....	468	41473	28 Agricultural Produce Agents Act (12/1992) :Rules in respect of Livestock Agents .....	468	41473
29 Financial Markets Act (19/2012) :Proposed amendments to the JSE Listing Require- ments: Transferability of Securities .....	511	41473	29 Financial Markets Act (19/2012) :Proposed amendments to the JSE Listing Require- ments: Transferability of Securities .....	511	41473
30 Long-term Insurance Act (52/1998) :Pro- posed amendments to the Policyholder Protection Rules.....	512	41473	30 Long-term Insurance Act (52/1998) :Pro- posed amendments to the Policyholder Protection Rules.....	512	41473
31 Quantity Surveying Profession Act (49/2000) :Appointment of council mem- bers to serve on the South African Coun- cil for the Quantity Surveying Profession (SACQSP) .....	513	41473	31 Quantity Surveying Profession Act (49/2000) :Appointment of council mem- bers to serve on the South African Coun- cil for the Quantity Surveying Profession (SACQSP) .....	513	41473
32 Architectural Profession Act (44/2000) :Appointment of Council Members to Fill Vacancies in the Current South African Council for the Architectural Profession (SACAP) .....	514	41473	32 Architectural Profession Act (44/2000) :Appointment of Council Members to Fill Vacancies in the Current South African Council for the Architectural Profession (SACAP) .....	514	41473
33 Construction Industry Development Board Act (38/2000) :Appointment of Board Members to serve on the Construction In- dustry Development Board (CIDB) .....	514	41473	33 Construction Industry Development Board Act (38/2000) :Appointment of Board Members to serve on the Construction In- dustry Development Board (CIDB) .....	514	41473



**IMPORTANT NOTICE:**

**THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS WILL NOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY ERRORS THAT MIGHT OCCUR DUE TO THE SUBMISSION OF INCOMPLETE / INCORRECT / ILLEGIBLE COPY.**

**No FUTURE QUERIES WILL BE HANDLED IN CONNECTION WITH THE ABOVE.**

**Contents**

<i>No.</i>		<i>Gazette No.</i>	<i>Page No.</i>
<b>GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS</b>			
<b>Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, Department of/ Landbou, Bosbou en Visserie, Departement van</b>			
212	Liquor Products Act (60/1989): Regulations: Amendment .....	41498	17
212	Wet op Drankprodukte (60/1989): Regulasies: Wysiging .....	41498	18
<b>Environmental Affairs, Department of/ Omgewingsake, Departement van</b>			
213	National Environmental Management Act (107/1998): Notice of intention to adopt the IEMP for the SKA phase 1 for public comment.....	41498	28
214	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (10/2004): Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape Mountain Zebra (Equus Zebra Zebra) .....	41498	31
<b>Health, Department of/ Gesondheid, Departement van</b>			
215	Dental Technicians Act (19/1979): Notice regarding Annual Fees payable to the Council.....	41498	117
216	Health Professions Act (56/1974): Regulations relating to the Specialities and Subspecialities in Medicine and Dentistry: Amendment .....	41498	123
217	Dental Technicians Act (19/1979): Regulations relating to the Registration of Dental Laboratories and Related Matters: Amendment.....	41498	130
218	National Health Care Act, 2003: Policy Guidelines for the Licensing of Residential and/or Day Care Facilities for Persons with Mental Illness and/or Severe or Profound Intellectual Disability .....	41498	133
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of/ Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>			
219	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various properties.....	41498	209
220	Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act (3/1996): Groenfontein, Portion 1 of Groenfontein No. 11 (commonly known as Woodlands).....	41498	210
221	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Portion of Morosi B Welland Farms Portions 1 & 2.....	41498	211
222	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Lot 180, Groenendal Farm, Lady Frere; Lot 181, Groenendal Annee Farm, Lady Frere and Lot 212, Grey's Pan Reserve Farm, Lady Frere .....	41498	212
223	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Erf 346, Erf 5555 and Erf 5556, North End.....	41498	213
224	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Portion of Garden Lot 121, Location No. 35 called All Saints, Engcobo .	41498	214
225	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various properties.....	41498	215
<b>GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS</b>			
<b>Economic Development Department/ Ekonomiese Ontwikkeling Departement</b>			
126	Competition Act (89/1998): Competition Tribunal: Notification of Complaint Referral.....	41498	217
127	Competition Tribunal: Notification of decision to approve merger .....	41498	218
<b>Labour, Department of/ Arbeid, Departement van</b>			
128	Labour Relations Act (66/1995): Accreditation of Bargaining Council - March 2018 (CCMA).....	41498	220
129	Provision of the Labour Relations Act (66/1995) (as amended): List of Private Agencies that have been accredited by the CCMA in terms of the Act for conciliation and/or arbitration and/or inquiry by arbitrator, with the terms of accreditation attached for the period 01 December 2017 to the 30 November 2017.....	41498	226
<b>Public Works, Department of/ Openbare Werke, Departement van</b>			
130	Property Valuers Profession Act (47/2000) (the Act): Invitation for Nominations to serve on the South African Council for the Property Valuers Profession ("SACPVP") .....	41498	229
<b>Rural Development and Land Reform, Department of/ Landelike Ontwikkeling en Grondhervorming, Departement van</b>			
131	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various properties.....	41498	230
132	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Court order dated 12 June 2017 granted by the Land Claims Court of South Africa in Case number LCC76/2009.....	41498	232
133	Restitution of Land Rights Act (22/1994): Various properties.....	41498	237
<b>Social Development, Department of/ Maatskaplike Ontwikkeling, Departement van</b>			
134	NPO Act (71/1997): The KwaZulu-Natal Department of Social Development Call for Funding Applications (Pro-		

	posal) to Render Social Development Services in the Province for 36 months .....	41498	238
<b>Trade and Industry, Department of/ Handel en Nywerheid, Departement van</b>			
135	Standards Act, 2008: Standards matters: New Standard, Revision Standard and Cancelled Standard .....	41498	240
136	International Trade Administration Commission: Customs Tariff Applications: List 02/2018 .....	41498	242
<b>Traditional Affairs, Department of/ Tradisionele Sake, Departement van</b>			
137	Customary Initiation Bill, 2018: Notice of intended introduction in Parliament of the Bill.....	41498	251
<b>Transport, Department of/ Vervoer, Departement van</b>			
138	International Air Service Act (60/1993): Grant/amendment of International Air Service License .....	41498	252
139	Air Service Licensing Act (115/1990): Application for the Grant or Amendment of Domestic Air Service Licence ...	41498	253

### BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS

38	Agricultural Produce Agents Act (12/1992): Unclaimed Monies payable to Principals of Fresh Produce Agents.....	41498	254
39	Health Professions Act (56/1974): Ethical Rules of Conduct for practitioners registered under the Health Professions Act, 1974: Amendment.....	41498	260

# Closing times for **ORDINARY WEEKLY** **GOVERNMENT GAZETTE** **2018**

*The closing time is **15:00** sharp on the following days:*

- **28 December 2017**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **05 January 2018**
- **05 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 January 2018**
- **12 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **19 January 2018**
- **19 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **26 January 2018**
- **26 January**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 February 2018**
- **02 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 February 2018**
- **09 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 February 2018**
- **16 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **23 February 2018**
- **23 February**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 March 2018**
- **02 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 March 2018**
- **09 March**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 March 2018**
- **15 March**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **23 March 2018**
- **22 March**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **29 March 2018**
- **28 March**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **06 April 2018**
- **06 April**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 April 2018**
- **13 April**, Friday for the issue of Friday **20 April 2018**
- **19 April**, Thursday for the issue of Thursday **26 April 2018**
- **25 April**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **04 May 2018**
- **04 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **11 May 2018**
- **11 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **18 May 2018**
- **18 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **25 May 2018**
- **25 May**, Friday for the issue of Friday **01 June 2018**
- **01 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **08 June 2018**
- **08 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **15 June 2018**
- **15 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **22 June 2018**
- **22 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **29 June 2018**
- **29 June**, Friday for the issue of Friday **06 July 2018**
- **06 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **13 July 2018**
- **13 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **20 July 2018**
- **20 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **27 July 2018**
- **27 July**, Friday for the issue of Friday **03 August 2018**
- **02 August**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **10 August 2018**
- **10 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **17 August 2018**
- **17 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **24 August 2018**
- **24 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **31 August 2018**
- **31 August**, Friday for the issue of Friday **07 September 2018**
- **07 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **14 September 2018**
- **14 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **21 September 2018**
- **20 September**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **28 September 2018**
- **28 September**, Friday for the issue of Friday **05 October 2018**
- **05 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **12 October 2018**
- **12 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **19 October 2018**
- **19 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **26 October 2018**
- **26 October**, Friday for the issue of Friday **02 November 2018**
- **02 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **09 November 2018**
- **09 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **16 November 2018**
- **16 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **23 November 2018**
- **23 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **30 November 2018**
- **30 November**, Friday for the issue of Friday **07 December 2018**
- **07 December**, Friday for the issue of Friday **14 December 2018**
- **13 December**, Thursday for the issue of Friday **21 December 2018**
- **19 December**, Wednesday for the issue of Friday **28 December 2018**



## LIST OF TARIFF RATES FOR PUBLICATION OF NOTICES

**COMMENCEMENT: 1 APRIL 2016**

### NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL

Notice sizes for National, Provincial & Tender gazettes 1/4, 2/4, 3/4, 4/4 per page. Notices submitted will be charged at R1000 per full page, pro-rated based on the above categories.

Pricing for National, Provincial - Variable Priced Notices		
Notice Type	Page Space	New Price (R)
Ordinary National, Provincial	1/4 - Quarter Page	250.00
Ordinary National, Provincial	2/4 - Half Page	500.00
Ordinary National, Provincial	3/4 - Three Quarter Page	750.00
Ordinary National, Provincial	4/4 - Full Page	1000.00

### EXTRA-ORDINARY

All Extra-ordinary National and Provincial gazette notices are non-standard notices and attract a variable price based on the number of pages submitted.

The pricing structure for National and Provincial notices which are submitted as **Extra ordinary submissions** will be charged at **R3000** per page.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

The **Government Printing Works (GPW)** has established rules for submitting notices in line with its electronic notice processing system, which requires the use of electronic *Adobe Forms*. Please ensure that you adhere to these guidelines when completing and submitting your notice submission.

### CLOSING TIMES FOR ACCEPTANCE OF NOTICES

1. The *Government Gazette* and *Government Tender Bulletin* are weekly publications that are published on Fridays and the closing time for the acceptance of notices is strictly applied according to the scheduled time for each gazette.
2. Please refer to the Submission Notice Deadline schedule in the table below. This schedule is also published online on the Government Printing works website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za)

All re-submissions will be subject to the standard cut-off times.

**All notices received after the closing time will be rejected.**

Government Gazette Type	Publication Frequency	Publication Date	Submission Deadline	Cancellations Deadline
National Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Regulation Gazette	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00, to be published the following Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Petrol Price Gazette	As required	First Wednesday of the month	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Road Carrier Permits	Weekly	Friday	Thursday 15h00, to be published the following Friday	3 days prior to publication
Unclaimed Monies (justice, labour or lawyers)	January / As required 2 per year	Any	15 January / As required	3 days prior to publication
Parliament (acts, white paper, green paper)	As required	Any		3 days prior to publication
Manuals	As required	Any	None	None
State of Budget (National Treasury)	Monthly	Any	7 days prior to publication	3 days prior to publication
Legal Gazettes A, B and C	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Tender Bulletin	Weekly	Friday	Friday 15h00 for next Friday	Tuesday, 15h00 - 3 days prior to publication
Gauteng	Weekly	Wednesday	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Eastern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Northern Cape	Weekly	Monday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
North West	Weekly	Tuesday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
KwaZulu-Natal	Weekly	Thursday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Limpopo	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Mpumalanga	Weekly	Friday	One week before publication	3 days prior to publication
Gauteng Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	Wednesday before the First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Northern Cape Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
National Liquor License Gazette	Monthly	First Friday of the month	Two weeks before publication	3 days after submission deadline
Mpumalanga Liquor License Gazette	2 per month	Second & Fourth Friday	One week before	3 days prior to publication

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****EXTRAORDINARY GAZETTES**

3. *Extraordinary Gazettes* can have only one publication date. If multiple publications of an *Extraordinary Gazette* are required, a separate Z95/Z95Prov *Adobe* Forms for each publication date must be submitted.

**NOTICE SUBMISSION PROCESS**

4. Download the latest *Adobe* form, for the relevant notice to be placed, from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za).
5. The *Adobe* form needs to be completed electronically using *Adobe Acrobat / Acrobat Reader*. Only electronically completed *Adobe* forms will be accepted. No printed, handwritten and/or scanned *Adobe* forms will be accepted.
6. The completed electronic *Adobe* form has to be submitted via email to [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za). The form needs to be submitted in its original electronic *Adobe* format to enable the system to extract the completed information from the form for placement in the publication.
7. Every notice submitted **must** be accompanied by an official **GPW** quotation. This must be obtained from the *eGazette* Contact Centre.
8. Each notice submission should be sent as a single email. The email **must** contain **all documentation relating to a particular notice submission**.
  - 8.1. Each of the following documents must be attached to the email as a separate attachment:
    - 8.1.1. An electronically completed *Adobe* form, specific to the type of notice that is to be placed.
      - 8.1.1.1. For *National Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* notices, the notices must be accompanied by an electronic Z95 or Z95Prov *Adobe* form
      - 8.1.1.2. The notice content (body copy) **MUST** be a separate attachment.
    - 8.1.2. A copy of the official **Government Printing Works** quotation you received for your notice .  
(Please see *Quotation* section below for further details)
    - 8.1.3. A valid and legible Proof of Payment / Purchase Order: **Government Printing Works** account customer must include a copy of their Purchase Order. **Non-Government Printing Works** account customer needs to submit the proof of payment for the notice
    - 8.1.4. Where separate notice content is applicable (Z95, Z95 Prov and TForm 3, it should **also** be attached as a separate attachment. (Please see the *Copy Section* below, for the specifications).
    - 8.1.5. Any additional notice information if applicable.
9. The electronic *Adobe* form will be taken as the primary source for the notice information to be published. Instructions that are on the email body or covering letter that contradicts the notice form content will not be considered. The information submitted on the electronic *Adobe* form will be published as-is.
10. To avoid duplicated publication of the same notice and double billing, Please submit your notice **ONLY ONCE**.
11. Notices brought to **GPW** by "walk-in" customers on electronic media can only be submitted in *Adobe* electronic form format. All "walk-in" customers with notices that are not on electronic *Adobe* forms will be routed to the Contact Centre where they will be assisted to complete the forms in the required format.
12. Should a customer submit a bulk submission of hard copy notices delivered by a messenger on behalf of any organisation e.g. newspaper publisher, the messenger will be referred back to the sender as the submission does not adhere to the submission rules.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****QUOTATIONS**

13. Quotations are valid until the next tariff change.
  - 13.1. **Take note:** GPW's annual tariff increase takes place on **1 April** therefore any quotations issued, accepted and submitted for publication up to **31 March** will keep the old tariff. For notices to be published from 1 April, a quotation must be obtained from **GPW** with the new tariffs. Where a tariff increase is implemented during the year, **GPW** endeavours to provide customers with 30 days' notice of such changes.
14. Each quotation has a unique number.
15. Form Content notices must be emailed to the eGazette Contact Centre for a quotation.
  - 15.1. The *Adobe* form supplied is uploaded by the Contact Centre Agent and the system automatically calculates the cost of your notice based on the layout/format of the content supplied.
  - 15.2. It is critical that these *Adobe* Forms are completed correctly and adhere to the guidelines as stipulated by **GPW**.
16. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO GPW ACCOUNT HOLDERS:**
  - 16.1. **GPW** Account Customers must provide a valid **GPW** account number to obtain a quotation.
  - 16.2. Accounts for **GPW** account customers **must** be active with sufficient credit to transact with **GPW** to submit notices.
    - 16.2.1. If you are unsure about or need to resolve the status of your account, please contact the **GPW** Finance Department prior to submitting your notices. (If the account status is not resolved prior to submission of your notice, the notice will be failed during the process).
17. **APPLICABLE ONLY TO CASH CUSTOMERS:**
  - 17.1. Cash customers doing **bulk payments** must use a **single email address** in order to use the **same proof of payment** for submitting multiple notices.
18. The responsibility lies with you, the customer, to ensure that the payment made for your notice(s) to be published is sufficient to cover the cost of the notice(s).
19. Each quotation will be associated with one proof of payment / purchase order / cash receipt.
  - 19.1. This means that the quotation number can only be used once to make a payment.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****COPY (SEPARATE NOTICE CONTENT DOCUMENT)**

20. Where the copy is part of a separate attachment document for Z95, Z95Prov and TForm03

20.1. Copy of notices must be supplied in a separate document and may not constitute part of any covering letter, purchase order, proof of payment or other attached documents.

The content document should contain only one notice. (You may include the different translations of the same notice in the same document).

- 20.2. The notice should be set on an A4 page, with margins and fonts set as follows:

Page size = A4 Portrait with page margins: Top = 40mm, LH/RH = 16mm, Bottom = 40mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

Page size = A4 Landscape with page margins: Top = 16mm, LH/RH = 40mm, Bottom = 16mm;  
Use font size: Arial or Helvetica 10pt with 11pt line spacing;

**CANCELLATIONS**

21. Cancellation of notice submissions are accepted by **GPW** according to the deadlines stated in the table above in point 2. Non-compliance to these deadlines will result in your request being failed. Please pay special attention to the different deadlines for each gazette. Please note that any notices cancelled after the cancellation deadline will be published and charged at full cost.
22. Requests for cancellation must be sent by the original sender of the notice and must accompanied by the relevant notice reference number (N-) in the email body.

**AMENDMENTS TO NOTICES**

23. With effect from 01 October 2015, **GPW** will not longer accept amendments to notices. The cancellation process will need to be followed according to the deadline and a new notice submitted thereafter for the next available publication date.

**REJECTIONS**

24. All notices not meeting the submission rules will be rejected to the customer to be corrected and resubmitted. Assistance will be available through the Contact Centre should help be required when completing the forms. (012-748 6200 or email [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)). Reasons for rejections include the following:
- 24.1. Incorrectly completed forms and notices submitted in the wrong format, will be rejected.
- 24.2. Any notice submissions not on the correct *Adobe* electronic form, will be rejected.
- 24.3. Any notice submissions not accompanied by the proof of payment / purchase order will be rejected and the notice will not be processed.
- 24.4. Any submissions or re-submissions that miss the submission cut-off times will be rejected to the customer. The Notice needs to be re-submitted with a new publication date.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES****APPROVAL OF NOTICES**

25. Any notices other than legal notices are subject to the approval of the Government Printer, who may refuse acceptance or further publication of any notice.
26. No amendments will be accepted in respect to separate notice content that was sent with a Z95 or Z95Prov notice submissions. The copy of notice in layout format (previously known as proof-out) is only provided where requested, for Advertiser to see the notice in final Gazette layout. Should they find that the information submitted was incorrect, they should request for a notice cancellation and resubmit the corrected notice, subject to standard submission deadlines. The cancellation is also subject to the stages in the publishing process, i.e. If cancellation is received when production (printing process) has commenced, then the notice cannot be cancelled.

**GOVERNMENT PRINTER INDEMNIFIED AGAINST LIABILITY**

27. The Government Printer will assume no liability in respect of—
  - 27.1. any delay in the publication of a notice or publication of such notice on any date other than that stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.2. erroneous classification of a notice, or the placement of such notice in any section or under any heading other than the section or heading stipulated by the advertiser;
  - 27.3. any editing, revision, omission, typographical errors or errors resulting from faint or indistinct copy.

**LIABILITY OF ADVERTISER**

28. Advertisers will be held liable for any compensation and costs arising from any action which may be instituted against the Government Printer in consequence of the publication of any notice.

**CUSTOMER INQUIRIES**

Many of our customers request immediate feedback/confirmation of notice placement in the gazette from our Contact Centre once they have submitted their notice – While **GPW** deems it one of their highest priorities and responsibilities to provide customers with this requested feedback and the best service at all times, we are only able to do so once we have started processing your notice submission.

**GPW** has a 2-working day turnaround time for processing notices received according to the business rules and deadline submissions.

Please keep this in mind when making inquiries about your notice submission at the Contact Centre.

29. Requests for information, quotations and inquiries must be sent to the Contact Centre ONLY.
30. Requests for Quotations (RFQs) should be received by the Contact Centre at least **2 working days** before the submission deadline for that specific publication.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS - BUSINESS RULES

### PAYMENT OF COST

31. The Request for Quotation for placement of the notice should be sent to the Gazette Contact Centre as indicated above, prior to submission of notice for advertising.
32. Payment should then be made, or Purchase Order prepared based on the received quotation, prior to the submission of the notice for advertising as these documents i.e. proof of payment or Purchase order will be required as part of the notice submission, as indicated earlier.
33. Every proof of payment must have a valid **GPW** quotation number as a reference on the proof of payment document.
34. Where there is any doubt about the cost of publication of a notice, and in the case of copy, an enquiry, accompanied by the relevant copy, should be addressed to the Gazette Contact Centre, **Government Printing Works**, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001 email: [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za) before publication.
35. Overpayment resulting from miscalculation on the part of the advertiser of the cost of publication of a notice will not be refunded, unless the advertiser furnishes adequate reasons why such miscalculation occurred. In the event of underpayments, the difference will be recovered from the advertiser, and future notice(s) will not be published until such time as the full cost of such publication has been duly paid in cash or electronic funds transfer into the **Government Printing Works** banking account.
36. In the event of a notice being cancelled, a refund will be made only if no cost regarding the placing of the notice has been incurred by the **Government Printing Works**.
37. The **Government Printing Works** reserves the right to levy an additional charge in cases where notices, the cost of which has been calculated in accordance with the List of Fixed Tariff Rates, are subsequently found to be excessively lengthy or to contain overmuch or complicated tabulation.

### PROOF OF PUBLICATION

38. Copies of any of the *Government Gazette* or *Provincial Gazette* can be downloaded from the **Government Printing Works** website [www.gpwonline.co.za](http://www.gpwonline.co.za) free of charge, should a proof of publication be required.
39. Printed copies may be ordered from the Publications department at the ruling price. The **Government Printing Works** will assume no liability for any failure to post or for any delay in despatching of such *Government Gazette(s)*.

## GOVERNMENT PRINTING WORKS CONTACT INFORMATION

#### Physical Address:

**Government Printing Works**

149 Bosman Street

Pretoria

#### Postal Address:

Private Bag X85

Pretoria

0001

#### GPW Banking Details:

**Bank:** ABSA Bosman Street

**Account No.:** 405 7114 016

**Branch Code:** 632-005

**For Gazette and Notice submissions:** Gazette Submissions:

**For queries and quotations, contact:** Gazette Contact Centre:

**E-mail:** [submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:submit.egazette@gpw.gov.za)

**E-mail:** [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)

**Tel:** 012-748 6200

**Contact person for subscribers:** Mrs M. Toka:

**E-mail:** [subscriptions@gpw.gov.za](mailto:subscriptions@gpw.gov.za)

**Tel:** 012-748-6066 / 6060 / 6058

**Fax:** 012-323-9574

---

**GOVERNMENT NOTICES • GOEWERMENTSKENNISGEWINGS**

---

**DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES**

NO. 212

16 MARCH 2018

**LIQUOR PRODUCTS ACT, 1989  
(ACT No. 60 OF 1989)****REGULATIONS : AMENDMENT \***

The Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries, acting in terms of section 27 of the Liquor Products Act, 1989 (Act No. 60 of 1989), has made the regulations in the Schedule.

- \* To provide for amendments to the fees payable in respect of anything done under this Act, or which is required to be so done.

**SCHEDULE****Definition**

1. In this Schedule "the Regulations" means the regulations published by Government Notice No. R. 624 of 13 July 2001 as amended by Government Notice No. R. 685 of 17 May 2002, No. R. 618 of 9 May 2003, R.1071 of 17 September 2004, R.284 of 1 April 2005, R. 270 of 31 March 2006, R.162 of 2 March 2007, R 562 of 22 May 2009, R.709 of 9 September 2011, R.234 of 30 March 2012, R.89 of 14 February 2014, R.66 of 6 February 2015 and R. 238 of 17 March 2017.

**Amendment of table of fees payable**

2. Substitution for table of fees payable of the following table :



## DEPARTEMENT VAN LANDBOU, BOSBOU EN VISSERIE

NO. 212

16 MAART 2018

**WET OP DRANKPRODUKTE, 1989  
(WET No. 60 VAN 1989)****REGULASIES : WYSIGING \***

Die Minister van Landbou, Bosbou en Visserie, het kragtens artikel 27 van die Wet op Drankprodukte, 1989 (Wet No. 60 van 1989), die regulasies in die Bylae uitgevaardig.

- \* Om voorsiening te maak vir tariefaanpassings ten opsigte van enige iets wat kragtens hierdie Wet gedoen word, of wat verlang word om aldus gedoen te word.

**BYLAE****Woordomskrywing**

1. In hierdie Bylae beteken "die Regulasies" die regulasies gepubliseer by Goewermentskennisgewing No. R. 624 van 13 Julie 2001 soos gewysig deur Goewermentskennisgewing No. R.685 van 17 Mei 2002, R. 618 van 9 Mei 2003, R.1071 van 17 September 2004, R.284 van 1 April 2005, R. 270 van 31 Maart 2006, R.162 van 2 Maart 2007, R.562 van 22 Mei 2009, R.709 van 9 September 2011, R.234 van 30 Maart 2012, R.89 van 14 Februarie 2014, R.66 van 6 Februarie 2015 en R.238 van 17 Maart 2017.

**Wysiging van tabel van gelde betaalbaar**

2. Tabel van gelde betaalbaar word deur die volgende tabel vervang:

**TABLE OF FEES PAYABLE/ TABEL VAN GELDE BETAALBAAR**

[Section 27(1)(k) of the Act / van die Wet]

<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van Betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
1. Application for the registration of a code number  [reg. 2(1)]	R120,00 per Application	1. Aansoek om die registrasie van 'n kodenommer  [reg. 2(1)]	R120,00 per aansoek
2. Annual maintenance of the registration of a code number  [reg. 2(2)]	R625,00 per Application	2. Jaarlikse instandhouding van die registrasie van 'n kodenommer  [reg. 2(2)]	R625,00 per aansoek
3. Application for an import certificate  (a) In the case of a product intended for importation in bulk;  (b) in the case of product intended for import in the labelled containers in which it will be sold  (c) in the case of a product imported as bona fide trade samples or for purposes other than the sale thereof  [reg. 3]	R433,00 per Application     R253,00 per application     R37,00 per litre or a portion Thereof	3. Aansoek om invoersertifikaat  (a) in die geval van 'n produk wat vir invoer in stortmaat beoog word;  (b) in die geval van 'n produk wat vir invoer beoog word in die geëtiketteerde houers waarin dit verkoop sal word  (c) In die geval van 'n produk wat as bona fide handelsmonster of vir ander doeleindes as die verkoop daarvan ingevoer is.  [reg. 3]	R433,00 per aansoek     R253,00 per aansoek     R37,00 per liter of gedeelte daarvan

Purpose of Payment	Amount	Doel van Betaling	Bedrag
4. Analysis of a sample of a product intended for import and in respect of which an acceptable certificate of analysis was not provided. [reg. 4]	R637,00 plus analysis fee as per general liquor analysis tariffs	4. Aansoek om 'n ontledingssertifikaat [reg. 4]	R637,00 plus ontledingstarief soos per algemene drank ontledingstariewe
5. Application for a removal certificate:		5. Aansoek om 'n verwyderingssertifikaat:	
(a) in the case of a product imported in bulk	Nil	(a) in die geval van 'n produk in stortmaat ingevoer	Nul
(b) in the case of a product that has been imported in the labeled containers in which it will be sold and	R126,00 per application plus R4,90 per hl or Portion thereof	(b) in die geval van 'n produk wat ingevoer is in die geëtiketteerde houers waarin dit verkoop sal word	R126,00 per aansoek plus R4,90 per hl of gedeelte daarvan
(c) in the case of a product imported as a bona fide trade sample or for other purposes than the sale thereof [reg. 5]	Nil	(c) in die geval van 'n produk wat as 'n bona fide handelsmonster of vir ander doeleindes as die verkoop daarvan ingevoer is. [reg. 5]	Nul

Purpose of Payment	Amount	Doel van Betaling	Bedrag
6(a) Application for a permission for the blending or sale after bottling of a liquor product imported in bulk	R951,00 per application	6(a)Aansoek om 'n toestemming vir die vermenging of verkoop van bottelering van 'n drankprodukt wat in stortmaat ingevoer is.	R951,00 per aansoek
6(b)Application for a permission for the blending or sale after bottling of a liquor product imported in bulk, for consecutive bottling batches of the same blend where inspection have not been performed  [reg. 6]	R717,00 per application	6(b)Aansoek om 'n toestemming vir die vermenging of verkoop van bottelering van 'n drankprodukt wat in stortmaat ingevoer is, vir agtereenvolgende bottelingslotte van dieselfde vermenging waar 'n inspeksie nie uitgevoer is nie.. [reg. 6]	R717,00 per aansoek
7. Application for export certificate [Reg 7]:  (a) in the case of a liquor product in respect of which sampling is required under regulation 52(1) of the Liquor Products Act Regulations;	R115,00 per application plus R6,00 per hl or portion thereof, to the first 100 hl, unless a control sample was drawn in terms of Reg 54(5)(a) and an official analyses was not possible, then tariff will be R115 per application plus R4,00 per hl or a portion thereof , to the first 100 hl (analysis fee charged separately).	7. Aansoek om uitvoersertifikaat [Reg 7] :  (a) in die geval van 'n produk wat bemonstering vereis ingevolge regulasie 52(1) van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies;	R115,00 per aansoek plus R6,00 per hl of gedeelte daarvan tot die eerste 100 hl, behalwe as 'n kontrole monster getrek is in terme van Reg 54(5)(a) en 'n amptelike analise was nie moontlik nie, dan is die tarief R115,00 per aansoek plus R4,00 per hl of gedeelte daarvan tot die eerste 100 hl (ontledings tarief word apart gehef)

(b) in the case of a liquor product in respect of which exemption from sampling is granted under regulation 52(7) of the Liquor Products Regulations	R55,00 per application plus R6,00 per hl or a portion thereof to the first 100 hl, unless a control sample was drawn in terms of Reg 54(5)(a) and an official analyses was not possible, then tariff will be R55 per application plus R4,00 per hl or a portion thereof, to the first 100 hl (analysis fee charged separately).	(b) in die geval van 'n drankprodukt wat vrygestel is van bemonstering ingevolge regulasie 52(7) van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies;	R55,00 per aansoek plus R6,00 per hl of gedeelte daarvan tot die eerste 100 hl, behalwe as 'n kontrole monster getrek is in terme van Reg 54(5)(a) en 'n amptelike analise was nie moontlik nie, dan is die tarief R55,00 per aansoek plus R4,00 per hl of gedeelte daarvan tot die eerste 100 hl (ontledings tarief word apart gehef)
(c) In the case of a liquor product in respect of which a renewal of the sensorial grace period is required under regulation 52(1) and (7) of the Liquor Products Act Regulations	R230,00 per application, plus analysis fee as per general liquor analysis tariffs.	(b) In die geval van 'n drankprodukt wat se sensoriese gracie periode 'n hernuwing vereis ingevolge regulasies 52(1) en (7) van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies;	R230,00 per aansoek, plus ontledingstarief soos per algemene drank-ontledingstariewe
<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van Betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
(d) in the case of liquor products included in domestic or personal possession of a person leaving the Republic temporarily or permanently, or which is intended as a gift or	R72,00 per application	(d) in die geval van drankprodukte ingesluit in huishoudelike of persoonlike besittings van 'n persoon wat die Republiek tydelik of permanent verlaat, of wat as 'n	R72,00 per aansoek

<p>bona fide trade sample and which is not more than 100 litres each of liquor products which differ in container, composition and labelling, or which is exported by a person who is visiting the Republic as a bona fide tourist, or for use by a Head of State or diplomatic Representative of the Republic [reg. 51(4)(a) and (b) of the Liquor Products Act Regulations];</p>		<p>geskenk of bona fide handelsmonster bedoel is en wat nie meer as 100 liter elk van drankprodukte wat in houer, samestelling en etikettering verskil, of wat as bona fide toeris besoek uitgevoer word, of vir die gebruik deur Staatshoofde of diplomatieke verteenwoordigers van die Republiek [reg. 51(4)(a) en (b) van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies];</p>	
<p>(e) in the case of a liquor product, grape juice or concentrated must being exported to a destination in the European Community [reg. 51(2)(c) of the Liquor Products Act Regulations];</p>	<p>R54,00 per Application</p>	<p>(e) in die geval van 'n drankprodukt, duiwe sap of gekonsentreerde mos wat na 'n bestemming in die Europese Unie uitgevoer word [reg.51(2)(c) van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies];</p>	<p>R54,00 per aansoek</p>
<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
<p>(f) In the case of inspections being done on export consignments after official working hours [reg. 54 of the Liquor Products Act Regulations]</p>	<p>R372,00 per 30 minutes or portion thereof (travel time included)</p>	<p>(f) In die geval van inspeksies wat gedoen word op uitvoer besendings na amptelike werksure [reg. 54 van die Wet op Drankprodukte Regulasies]</p>	<p>R372,00 per 30 minute of gedeelte daarvan (reistyd ingesluit)</p>
<p>(g) In the case of re-prints requested on Wine Online</p>	<p>R54,00 per application</p>	<p>(g) In die geval van kansellaries of herdruk aansoeke op Wine Online</p>	<p>R54,00 per aansoek</p>

8. Application for an authorisation for the sale of a sacramental beverage or an alcoholic beverage obtained by the alcoholic fermentation of the juice of oranges with cane sugar or mead  [reg. 8(1)]	R846,00 per application	8. Aansoek om magtig- ging vir die verkoop van sakramentele drank, 'n alkoholiese drank verkry deur die alkoholiese gisting van die sap van lemoene tesame met rietsuiker of heuning- drank  [reg. 8(1)]	R846,00 per aansoek
9. Annual maintenance of an authorisation referred to in Item 8  [reg. 8(2)]	R626,00 per authorization	9. Jaarlikse instandhou- ding van 'n magtiging in Item 8 bedoel.  [reg. 8(2)]	R626,00 per magtiging
10. Lodging of an appeal against a decision or direction by the Administering Officer or the Wine and Spirit Board[reg. 9]	R6 504,00 per appeal	10. Indiening van 'n appél teen die be- slissing of lasgewing deur die Beherende Amptenaar of die Wyn-en-Spiritusraad [reg. 9]	R6 504,00 per appél
<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van Betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
11. General Liquor  Analysis :  (all analysis fees will be charged separa- tely to the adminis- trative fees for applications as referred to under tariff 7)		11. Algemene Drank  Ontledings :  (alle ontledingsta- riewe sal afsonder- lik gehef word van administratiewe tariewe vir aan- soeke soos aangedui onder tarief 7)	
(a) Density of sample (pycnometric	R 56,00 per sample	(a) Digtheid van monster (pycnometriese me-	R56,00 per monster

method)/Specific Gravity/Total Dry Extract/Total Alcoholic Strength/Apparent Alcoholic Strength/Potential Alcoholic Strength/Obscured Alcoholic Strength/Alcoholic Strength		tode)/Soortgelyke gewig/Totale Droë Ekstrak/Totale Alkoholiese Sterkte/Skynbare Alkoholiese Sterkte/Potensiële Alkoholiese Sterkte/Verbergde Alkoholiese Sterkte/Alkoholiese Sterkte	
(b) Alcoholic Strength by Volume (Wine and Spirit Board as client)	R14,00 per sample	(b) Alkoholsterkte per Volume (Wyn-en-Spiritusraad as kliënt)	R14,00 per monster
(c) Reducing Sugar	R50,00 per sample	(c) Reduserende Suiker	R50,00 per monster
(c) Volatile Acidity	R34,00 per sample	(d) Vlugtige Suur	R34,00 per monster
(d) Total Titratable Acidity/pH	R 30,00 per sample	(e) Totale Titreerbare Suur/pH	R 30,00 per monster
(e) Sulphur Dioxide Free (NIR Spectroscopy Method)	R23,00 per sample	(f) Vry Swaweldioksied (NIR spektroskopie metode)	R23,00 per monster
<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van Betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
(f) Sulphur Dioxide Free (Aspiration Reference Method)	R50,00 per sample	(g) Vry Swaweldioksied (Aspirasie Verwysings metode)	R50,00 per monster
(g) Sulphur Dioxide Total (NIR spectroscopy Method)	R23,00 per sample	(h) Totale Swaweldioksied (NIR spektroskopie metode)	R23,00 per monster
(i) Sulphur Dioxide Total (Aspiration Reference Method)	R50,00 per sample	(h) Totale Swaweldioksied (Aspirasie Verwysings Metode)	R50,00 per monster
(j) Esters	R207,00 per sample	(j) Esters	R207,00 per monster
(k) Higher Alcohol	R172,00 per Sample	(k) Hoër Alkohol	R172,00 per monster
(l) Methanol	R172,00 per Sample	(l) Metanol	R172,00 per monster



(m) Sorbic Acid	R172,00 per sample	(m) Sorbiensuur	R172,00 per monster
(n) Ascorbic Acid	R316,00 per sample	(n) Askorbiensuur	R316,00 per monster
(o) Citric Acid	R316,00 per sample	(o) Sitroensuur	R316,00 per monster
(p) Bentonite Addition	R92,00 per sample	(p) Bentoniet Byvoeging	R92,00 per monster
(q) Protein Stability	R34,00 per sample	(q) Proteïen Stabiliteit	R34,00 per monster
(r) Cold Stability (Tartrate Stability)	R34,00 per sampler	(r) Koud Stabiliteit (Tartraat Stabiliteit)	R34,00 per monster
(s) Malic Acid (HPLC)	R203,00 per sample	(s) Appelsuur (HPLC)	R203,00 per monster
(t) Zinc	R21,00 per sample	(t) Sink	R21,00 per monster
(u) Potassium	R21,00 per sample	(u) Kalium	R21,00 per monster
<b>Purpose of Payment</b>	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Doel van Betaling</b>	<b>Bedrag</b>
(v) Calcium	R21,00 per sample	(v) Kalsium	R21,00 per monster
(w) Lead	R38,00 per sample	(w) Lood	R38,00 per monster
(x) Copper	R38,00 per sample	(x) Koper	R38,00 per monster
(y) Cadmium	R38,00 per sample	(y) Kadmium	R38,00 per monster
(z) Iron	R38,00 per sample	(z) Yster	R38,00 per monster
(aa) Phosphate (HPLC)	R126,00 per sample	(aa) Fosfaat (HPLC)	R126,00 per monster
(ab) Colouring Agents	R355,00 per	(ab) Kleurmiddels	R355,00 per

	sample		monster
(ac) Glycerol/Propylene Glycol/Diethylene Glycol	R355,00 per sample	(ac) Gliserol/Propileen Glikol/Dietileen Glikol	R355,00 per monster
(ad) Gas Pressure (1) At -4 degrees C	R204,00 per sample	(ad) Gasdruk (1) By -4 grade C	R204,00 per monster
(2) Standard method	R20,00 per sample	(2) Standaard metode	R20,00 per monster
(ae) Total Sugar	R50,00 per sample	(ae) Totale Suiker	R50,00 per monster
(af) Sucrose	R58,00 per sample	(af) Sukrose	R58,00 per monster
(ag) Butterfat	R222,00 per sample	(ag) Bottervet	R222,00 per monster
(ah) Natamycin	R610,00 per sample	(ah) Nataymycin	R610,00 per monster
(ai) Diverse GC analysis not specified above	R610,00 per sample	(ai) Diverse GC analise nie bo gespesifiseer	R610,00 per monster
(aj) Diverse HPLC analysis not specified above	R440,00 per sample	(aj) Diverse HPLC analise nie bo gespesifiseer	R440,00 per monster
(ak) Allergens	R338,00 per sample	(ak) Allergene	R338,00 per monster
(al) Ash	R207,00 per sample	(al) As	R207,00 per monster
(am) Arsenic	R38,00 per sample	(am) Arseen	R38,00 per monster
(an) Pesticides in wine (LC/MS)	R441,00 per sample	(an) Pestisiedes in wyn (LCMS)	R441,00 per monster

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 213

16 MARCH 2018

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT, 1998  
(ACT NO. 107 OF 1998)****NOTICE OF INTENTION TO ADOPT THE INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN OF THE SQUARE KILOMETRE ARRAY (PHASE 1) AS ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT INSTRUMENT AND TO EXCLUDE, IN TERMS OF SECTION 24(2)(e) OF THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT, 1998, ACTIVITIES IDENTIFIED IN TERMS OF SECTION 24(2)(a) OR (b) OF THE ACT FROM THE REQUIREMENT TO OBTAIN ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION IN TERMS OF THE ACT**

I, Bomo Edna Edith Molewa, Minister of Environmental Affairs, hereby give notice of my intention to adopt the Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1) as an environmental management instrument and based on compliance to Chapter 4 of the IEMP, I intend to exclude, in terms of section 24(2)(e) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), all activities, identified in terms of section 24(2)(a) and (b) of the Act, which are associated with the development of phase 1 of the SKA and which are described in Chapter 2 of the IEMP from the requirement to obtain environmental authorisation.

Members of the public are invited to submit to the Minister, within 30 days of publication of this notice in the *Gazette*, written comments or inputs to the following addresses:

By post to: The Director-General  
Department of Environmental Affairs  
Attention: Mr A Mocheko  
Private Bag X447  
**PRETORIA**  
0001

By hand at: Reception, Environment House, 473 Steve Biko Road, Arcadia, Pretoria, 0083

By e-mail: [amocheko@environment.gov.za](mailto:amocheko@environment.gov.za)

Any inquiries in connection with the Notice can be directed to 012 399 9315.  
Comments received after the closing date may not be considered.



**BOMO EDNA EDITH MOLEWA**  
**MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS**

## SCHEDULE

### 1. INTRODUCTION

This Schedule applies to the Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1), as submitted to the Minister of Environmental Affairs by the National Research Foundation.

A Strategic Environmental Assessment has been undertaken for the South African mid-frequency array of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA1\_MID) project (Phase 1) in order to identify site environmental sensitivities and to prepare an Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) for adoption by the Minister as an environmental management instrument. This schedule proposes to adopt the IEMP and exclude all activities associated with the development, as identified in the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, from the requirement to obtain environmental authorisation.

### 2. ADOPTION OF THE INTEGRATED ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR THE SQUARE KILOMETRE ARRAY (PHASE 1)

The Integrated Environmental Management Plan (IEMP) for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1), as submitted by the National Research Foundation, has been reviewed and has been found to meet the requirements of and general principles contained in section 24N(2) and (3) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (the Act). The IEMP is therefore proposed to be adopted as an environmental management instrument in terms of the Act.

### 3. EXCLUSION OF ACTIVITIES IDENTIFIED IN TERMS OF SECTION 24(2)(a) AND (b) OF THE ACT

Based on the proposed adoption of the IEMP, the National Research Foundation will be excluded, in terms of section 24(2)(e) of the Act, from the requirement to obtain environmental authorisation for activities contemplated in Part V: Proposed SKA activities and infrastructure of Chapter 2: Project

Scope of the IEMP for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1), when undertaken outside of areas identified in the IEMP as unsuitable for development.

#### 4. CONDITIONS OF EXCLUSION

The proposed exclusion contemplated in this Notice is subject to the following conditions:

##### 4.1 The National Research Foundation—

4.1.1 must comply with the conditions contained in Chapter 4: of the Environmental Management Programme of the IEMP for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1) (hereinafter referred to as the “Environmental Management Programme”); and

4.1.2 may amend the environmental management actions contained in the Environmental Management Programme, if required in order to achieve the management outcomes, by—

4.1.2.1 effecting such amendments immediately; and

4.1.2.2 reflecting such amendments in the annual external environmental audit report as contemplated in the Environmental Management Programme.

5. Failure to comply with the conditions and commitments contemplated in this notice constitutes an offence in terms of Section 49(A)(1)(c) of the Act.

6. The IEMP for the Square Kilometre Array (Phase 1) and the Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) Report for the South Africa mid-frequency array of SKA Phase 1 (SKA\_MID), 2016 can be accessed at:

<http://www.skaphase1.csir.co.za>; and

<https://egis.environment.gov.za/SKAphase1>;

and the Gazetted notice can be accessed at:

[https://www.environment.gov.za/legislation/gazetted\\_notices](https://www.environment.gov.za/legislation/gazetted_notices).

## DEPARTMENT OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS

NO. 214

16 MARCH 2018

**NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT: BIODIVERSITY ACT, 2004  
(ACT NO. 10 OF 2004)****BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA (*EQUUS ZEBRA ZEBRA*)**

I, Bomo Edna Edith Molewa, Minister of Environmental Affairs, hereby, in terms of section 43(3) read with section 43(1)(b) of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004), publish the approved Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) in the Schedule hereto, for implementation.



**BOMO EDNA EDITH MOLEWA  
MINISTER OF ENVIRONMENTAL AFFAIRS**



## SCHEDULE

# BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN FOR THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA *Equus zebra zebra* IN SOUTH AFRICA



Photo: R. Smith

Jointly developed by

Lead Agent: CapeNature

Implementing Agencies: CapeNature, South African National Parks, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, National Zoological Gardens, Department of Environmental Affairs, Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation, Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Free State Department of Economic, Small business, Tourism and Environmental Affairs

Coral Birss<sup>1</sup>, Carly Cowell<sup>2</sup>, Natalie Hayward<sup>1</sup>, Dean Peinke<sup>3</sup>, Halszka Hrabar<sup>4</sup> and Antoinette Kotze<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> CapeNature

<sup>2</sup> South African National Parks

<sup>3</sup> Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency

<sup>4</sup> Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University

<sup>5</sup> National Zoological Gardens of South Africa



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

Citation

*Birss, C., Cowell, C., Hayward, N., Peinke, D., Hrabar, H.H. and Kotze, A. 2016. Biodiversity Management Plan for the Cape mountain zebra in South Africa. Jointly developed by CapeNature, South African National Parks, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, National Zoological Gardens, Department of Environmental Affairs, Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation, Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Free State Department of Economic, Small business, Tourism and Environmental Affairs. Version 1.0*



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

2



## SCHEDULE

**FOREWORD – Dr Peter Novellie**

This draft Biodiversity Management plan (BMP) constitutes an important milestone in the conservation of Cape mountain zebra. It traces the long history of conservation measures and research aimed at ensuring the future of the subspecies, from the early efforts of the first half of the twentieth century to the most recent update on its conservation status. This well documented history, together with an extensive consultation process, enabled the BMP to accurately identify the threats currently facing Cape mountain zebra, as well as to formulate a set of objectives designed to counter the threats. Finally the BMP outlines the next important steps, which constitute the governance arrangements for the implementation of the plan, and then its submission to the Department of Environmental Affairs for gazetting for public participation.

From the perspective of a thirty year personal association with the conservation of Cape mountain zebra I see in this plan a significant new approach. Responsibility for the conservation of mountain zebra has always been shared across a range of authorities and individuals, but never previously has there been such close collaboration between them. The BMP is the product of extensive consultation and information sharing between diverse role players in different levels of government and in the private sector. This collaborative process has not been finally concluded, but will continue after gazetting, and indeed throughout the implementation of the plan. The emphasis on monitoring, data collection and adaptive management in the BMP will ensure an ongoing process of information sharing and joint learning.

In providing for collaborative adaptive management the BMP resonates well with emerging ideas in the scientific literature on species conservation. A threatened species cannot be protected in isolation, only in the context of the social ecological system in which it occurs. Social ecological systems are complex and inherently unpredictable. Traditional species protection measures often assume predictability, requiring conservation authorities to decide in advance whether a given activity may or may not have deleterious consequences for the species.



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE



Authorization for the activity is then granted or withheld, usually without any monitoring of the consequences. This is unrealistic for complex, unpredictable systems, which are more appropriately dealt with by adaptive management (Doremus 2001; Green and Garmestani 2012). The BMP for Cape mountain zebra departs from traditional predictivist measures, committing to adaptive management and to the essential requirements of monitoring and review.

Unless adaptive management is conducted within a governance framework that is itself adaptive it has little chance of success (e.g. Walker 2012). This realization has produced a growing body of scholarship on adaptive governance (reviewed by Chaffin *et al.* 2014). Provision for monitoring, information sharing and collaborative learning are seen by many authors as essential to adaptive governance of complex systems (e.g. Dietz *et al.* 2003; Cilliers *et al.* 2013). Another feature conducive to adaptive governance is a diversity of authorities, each with its own geographic area and domain of authority, with each authority linking with others on common issues (Olsson *et al.* 2007; Biggs *et al.* 2012). Diverse governance can enable dynamic responses in the face of rapid change and uncertainty, whereas single-level, centralized governance units do not have the variety of response capabilities necessary to deal with complexity (Olsson *et al.* 2007). Another advantage of diversity is that strengths at one level can offset weaknesses at another (Biggs *et al.* 2012). Far from being an encumbrance, the diversity of institutions involved in the conservation of Cape mountain zebra may actually be a strength.

The Cape mountain zebra currently faces a number of complex challenges, not least the unavoidable shortage of human and financial resources to implement required conservation measures and monitoring. Perfect solutions will seldom be possible but, through collaboration across diverse levels, the BMP promises to find innovative, workable solutions.

## SCHEDULE

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Endemic to South Africa, Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) numbers declined to less than 60 individuals at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. These animals were isolated in three locations: Cradock (Eastern Cape), Kammanassie and Gamkaberg (Western Cape). Since then, conservation action has resulted in steady increases in the overall population number and distribution, however, the residual effects of a potential genetic bottleneck currently threatens the long term survival of the species throughout its natural distribution range. Cape mountain zebra now occur in a number of genetically separate and isolated populations and are threatened by, among other, small sub-population sizes, habitat fragmentation and hybridization with other equid species. Collaborative and integrated management among stakeholders, as well as public support, is required for effective management of the sub-populations to ensure the maintenance of genetic diversity within the meta-population and to promote sustainable utilisation by the private sector.

Cape mountain zebra is listed as Vulnerable (D1) by the IUCN and on Appendix I of the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora; a convention which regulates the international trade of the species, and requires a non-detriment finding for export permits to be granted.

At the end of 2015, the Cape mountain zebra meta-population comprised approximately 4,872 individuals in 76 sub-populations throughout South Africa. The meta-population is considered stable, increasing and has exceeded the previous target set in the 2002 IUCN Equid Specialist Group Status Action Plan for the mountain zebra as a species. Apart from the three relict sub-populations occurring on protected areas (Kammanassie Nature Reserve, Gamkaberg Nature Reserve and Mountain Zebra National Park), Cape mountain zebra have been reintroduced to another nine protected areas within their natural distribution range and 7 protected areas outside the natural distribution range, comprising approximately 70% of the population. Cape mountain zebra populations on private land were estimated at 1,481 individuals, in 2015, comprising approximately 30% of the total population.

In 2011, a partnership between CapeNature, the Wilderness Foundation, the World Wildlife Fund - South Africa and the Table Mountain Fund was initiated towards the drafting of a Biodiversity Management Plan (BMP-S) for Cape mountain zebra. The initiative was primarily aimed at integrating the efforts of the then Mountain Zebra Working Group into the BMP-S. An inter-agency collaboration between the South African National Parks, CapeNature, Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, National Zoological Gardens of South Africa, the National Department of Environmental Affairs, Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation, Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Free State Department of Economic, Small business, Tourism and Environmental Affairs, ensued and acknowledged the need for a Cape mountain zebra BMP-S to ensure the long term survival of the species in nature.

Stakeholder engagements identified threats and challenges including the loss of genetic diversity through inbreeding and genetic drift, diseases such as equine sarcoidosis, the risk of hybridization, predation, poaching, emigration threats, and the lack of implementation of a meta-population strategy. The selection of the Cape mountain zebra for a BMP-S is based on the requirements of the NDF, its threat status, the requirement for meta-population management and inter-agency



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

5

## SCHEDULE

cooperation towards shared objectives for the conservation of the species, standardised monitoring, collaborative research, increased participation by landowners and opportunities as a flagship for protected area expansion and stewardship initiatives.

During the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S development process, both internal and external stakeholder consultation developed the following **desired state** for the Cape mountain zebra:

*The scientifically sound conservation (including regulation) of an ecologically healthy and genetically diverse meta-population of Cape mountain zebra*

The **vision** is:

*An increasing, genetically healthy meta-population, supporting sustainable off-takes, with an increased conservation value and private sector investment in Cape mountain zebra.*

The desired state is underpinned by the following **goals**.

1. Conservation of the Cape mountain zebra meta-population.
2. Advancement of knowledge and understanding regarding the genetic diversity of the Cape mountain zebra meta-population.
3. Eliminate risk for genetic contamination due to hybridisation with other equine species and safeguard Cape mountain zebra in their natural distribution range.
4. Mitigate and manage the impact of current and emerging diseases.
5. Long-term monitoring of Cape mountain zebra meta-population dynamics and habitat.
6. Aligned legislation and mandates.
7. Effective communication, collaboration and coordination among stakeholders.

The prioritised **strategic objectives** of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S are as follows:

1. to maintain genetic diversity in the Cape mountain zebra meta-population,
2. to implement monitoring and research to inform adaptive management,
3. to consistently and uniformly implement legislation, regulations, policies and guidelines, and
4. to ensure effective communication, collaboration and coordination between stakeholders and the public for Cape mountain zebra conservation.

The implementation of this BMP-S will have the following **benefits**.

1. The Cape mountain zebra population remains stable and increasing.
2. Scientifically-sound meta-population management is implemented, and through this, the full extent of the genetic diversity is represented throughout the population.
3. The population is ecologically healthy and secure (including being regulated effectively and efficiently).
4. Implementation and maintenance of sustainable off-takes to support the NDF.
5. Private sector support and investment in Cape mountain zebra conservation.

The Biodiversity Management Plan for the Cape mountain zebra is aimed at **identifying, allocating and undertaking** the required, identified actions to enable stakeholders to contribute to the overall desired outcome of ensuring the long term survival of the subspecies in nature and thereby ensuring



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE**

the sustainable, non-detrimental harvest and off-take as an economic incentive for private land owners participating in the meta-population strategy.

The BMP-S therefore focusses on actions and strategies to strengthen the overall population performance, distribution and genetic diversity to ensure overall population fitness and resilience of the meta-population within the natural distribution range (and including protected areas with populations outside the natural distribution range).



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

7



## SCHEDULE

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to express their gratitude to all those who contributed to the development and compilation of this biodiversity management plan:

- The South African National Parks (SANParks), the Department of Environmental Affairs and the South African National Biodiversity Institute for hosting the first Stakeholder workshop at Tokai in November 2013.
- Participants in the Stakeholder Workshop held at Tokai, November 2013 (list attached as Appendix A).
- CapeNature Staff and Technical Working Group for contributions to the first draft (list attached as Appendix B).
- SANParks Scientific Services and Veterinary Wildlife Group for contributions to the first draft (list attached as Appendix B).
- Annelise le Roux for proof reading the first draft.
- Dr Peter Novellie for conducting the expert review and writing the foreword.
- Dr Lauren Waller for facilitating the Cape mountain zebra Biodiversity Management Plan: Actions and Relevant Agreements Workshop held at Driftsands Nature Reserve, May 2016.
- Guy Palmer for contributions and edits to the final draft.
- Humbu Mafumo (Department of Environmental Affairs) for contributions and edits to the final draft.
- Jeanetta Selier (South African National Biodiversity Institute) for contributions and edits to the final draft.
- Cobus Theron (Endangered Wildlife Trust) for contributions to the final draft.
- Participants in the Actions and Relevant Agreements Workshop held at Driftsands Nature Reserve, May 2016 (attendance list attached as Appendix E).
- Christine Kraft, Elsabe Swart and Marnus Smit (Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation) for contributions and edits to the final draft.

## SCHEDULE

## ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

AHS	African Horse Sickness
BES	Biodiversity Economy Strategy
BMP-S	Biodiversity Management Plan for Species
BPV	Bovine papillomavirus
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CITES	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species in Wild Fauna and Flora
CN	CapeNature
DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DEA: BC	Department of Environmental Affairs – Biodiversity and Conservation Branch
ECPTA	Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency
EWT	Endangered Wildlife Trust
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic acid, the molecule that carries most of the genetic instructions used in the development, functioning and reproduction of all known living organisms
EC DEDEAT	Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
FPA	Fire Protection Associations
FS DESTEA	Free State Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
HEI	Higher Education Institutions
HMZ	Hartmann's mountain zebra
IUCN	International Union for Conservation of Nature
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
MSE	Management Strategy Evaluation
MZWG	Mountain Zebra Working Group
NC DENC	Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation
NDF	Non-detriment Finding
NDR	Natural distribution range
NEM: BA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004
NEM: PAA	National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998
NP	National Park
NR	Nature Reserve
NRF	National Research Foundation
NZG	National Zoological Gardens of South Africa
PHASA	Professional Hunters Association of South Africa
PMG	Parliamentary Monitoring Group
PZ	Plains zebra
SAHGCA	South African Hunters and Game Conservation Association
SANBI	South Africa National Biodiversity Institute
SANParks	South African National Parks
SCC	Species Survival Commission
TMF	Table Mountain Fund
ToPS	Threatened or Protected Species Regulations
ToR	Terms of Reference



**SCHEDULE**

WCNCB	Western Cape Nature Conservation Board
WC GDDDB	Western Cape Game Distribution Database
WC DEA & DP	Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning
WCP	Western Cape Province
WCPAES	Western Cape Protected Area Expansion Strategy
WG1	Working Group on Biodiversity and Conservation
WRSA	Wildlife Ranching South Africa
WWF	World Wildlife Fund
WWF-SA	World Wide Fund for Nature – South Africa



## SCHEDULE

## GLOSSARY OF DEFINITIONS, SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL TERMS

In this BMP-S, unless the context indicates otherwise, a word or expression defined in the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEM: BA, Act 10 of 2004) or Protected Areas Act (NEM: PAA, Act 57 of 2004) has the same meaning.

Genetic diversity	Genetic diversity is the total number of genetic characteristics in the genetic makeup of a species. It is distinguished from genetic variability, which describes the tendency of genetic characteristics to vary. Genetic diversity is required for populations to adapt to environmental change. It is measured using an array of molecular and quantitative methods. Large populations of naturally outbreeding species usually have extensive genetic diversity, but it is usually reduced in populations and species of conservation concern (Frankham <i>et al.</i> 2006).
Monitoring	The collection and analysis of repeated observations or measurements to evaluate change in status, distribution or integrity in order to track the impacts of directed management implemented to achieve a stated management objective.
Protected areas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any area declared or proclaimed as such in terms of Section 3 or listed in the Second Schedule to the Western Cape Nature Conservation Management Act, 1997 (Act No. 9 of 1997); or</li> <li>Any of the protected areas referred to in Section 9 of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act No. 57 of 2003).</li> </ul>

## SCHEDULE

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>FOREWORD – Dr Peter Novellie .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>GLOSSARY OF DEFINITIONS, SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL TERMS .....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>LIST OF TABLES .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>LIST OF FIGURES .....</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>1) INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>15</b>
1.1 The need for a BMP-S for Cape mountain zebra .....	15
1.2 Vision and desired state .....	16
1.3 Objectives of the BMP-S .....	17
1.4 Benefits of the BMP-S .....	17
1.5 Anticipated outcomes of the BMP-S .....	17
<b>2) SPECIES BIOLOGY AND BACKGROUND INFORMATION .....</b>	<b>18</b>
2.1 Species ecology and biology .....	18
2.1.1 Taxonomic description .....	18
2.1.2 Distribution of Cape mountain zebra .....	18
2.1.3 Status of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations .....	20
2.1.4 Genetic status of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations .....	24
2.1.5 Life history and reproduction .....	27
2.1.6 Habitat requirements and resource assessment .....	27
2.1.7 Known diseases .....	30
2.2 Population statistics and trends .....	30
2.3 Research .....	31
2.4 Utilisation and socio-economic context .....	32
2.5 Conservation measures .....	33
2.5.1 The Mountain Zebra Working Group (MZWG) .....	34
2.5.2 Metapopulation management .....	36
2.5.3 Non-detriment finding (NDF) .....	37
2.5.4 Population viability analysis .....	38
2.6 Conservation status and legislative context .....	39
2.6.1 International obligations .....	40
2.6.2 National legislation .....	41
2.6.3 Other relevant South African legislation .....	41
<b>3) PLANNING FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>43</b>
3.1 The planning context .....	43
3.2 Key role players .....	43
3.3 Stakeholder engagement .....	44
3.4 Relevant agreements .....	45
3.5 Identification of lead and implementing agencies .....	45
3.6 Expert verification for quality of content and context .....	45
<b>4) BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN .....</b>	<b>47</b>
4.1 Lead and implementing agencies .....	47
4.2 Identified threats and challenges .....	47



## SCHEDULE

4.2.1	THREAT: Population Fragmentation .....	47
4.2.2	THREAT: Inbreeding .....	47
4.2.3	THREAT: Hybridisation .....	47
4.2.4	THREAT: Habitat alteration and fragmentation .....	48
4.2.5	THREAT: Insecure habitat .....	48
4.2.6	CHALLENGE: To implement effective metapopulation management .....	48
4.2.7	CHALLENGE: To provide incentives for private land owners to maintain viable sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra.....	48
4.2.8	CHALLENGE: To consistently and uniformly implement legislation, policies and IUCN guidelines .....	49
4.2.9	CHALLENGE: To communicate and collaborate effectively among stakeholders.....	49
4.2.10	CHALLENGE: To overcome management and capacity constraints.....	49
4.2.11	CHALLENGE: To create awareness.....	49
4.2.12	CHALLENGE: To integrate conservation planning.....	49
<b>5)</b>	<b>ACTION PLAN AND MONITORING FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>OBJECTIVE 1: MAINTAIN GENETIC DIVERSITY IN THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA META-POPULATION ....</b>	<b>51</b>
5.1.1	Objective target: Meta-population management .....	51
5.1.2	Objective target: Conserve a genetically diverse meta-population .....	53
5.1.3	Objective target: Safeguard Cape mountain zebra against hybridisation .....	55
5.1.4	Objective target: Known impact of disease in Cape mountain zebra.....	55
<b>5.2</b>	<b>OBJECTIVE 2: UNDERTAKE MONITORING AND RESEARCH TO INFORM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT .....</b>	<b>56</b>
5.2.1	Objective target: Long term monitoring of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations .....	56
<b>5.3</b>	<b>OBJECTIVE 3: CONSISTENTLY AND UNIFORMLY IMPLEMENT LEGISLATION, REGULATIONS, POLICIES AND GUIDELINES .....</b>	<b>58</b>
5.3.1	Objective target: Consistent and uniform development and implementation of legislation and policy. ....	58
<b>5.4</b>	<b>OBJECTIVE 4: EFFECTIVELY COMMUNICATE, COLLABORATE AND COORDINATE BETWEEN STAKEHOLDERS AND THE PUBLIC FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA CONSERVATION.....</b>	<b>59</b>
5.4.1	Objective target: Establish and maintain partnerships for Cape mountain zebra conservation.....	60
5.4.2	Objective target: Increase private sector investment and support for Cape mountain zebra conservation. .	61
5.4.3	Objective target: Increase public awareness and education on the status and threats facing Cape mountain zebra. ....	62
<b>6)</b>	<b>CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S REPORTING FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>7)</b>	<b>REFERENCES .....</b>	<b>69</b>
	<b>APPENDIX A: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S WORKSHOP PARTICIPANTS AND WORKSHOP INVITATION .....</b>	<b>75</b>
	<b>APPENDIX B: CONTRIBUTORS TO COMPILING FIRST DRAFT .....</b>	<b>77</b>
	<b>APPENDIX C: TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS / ADDITIONS / CHANGES .....</b>	<b>78</b>
	<b>APPENDIX D: ATTENDANCE REGISTER AND INVITEE LIST FOR THE ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR HTE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S.....</b>	<b>80</b>
	<b>APPENDIX E: VENN DIAGRAMS ON STAKEHOLDER RELATIONSHIPS TOWARDS ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVES OF THE BMP-S: ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S .....</b>	<b>83</b>
	<b>APPENDIX F: NOTES .....</b>	<b>85</b>

## SCHEDULE

### LIST OF TABLES

- Table 1:** Cape mountain zebra sub-population sizes, distribution, sub-population source/s and management authority in 2015.
- Table 2:** Summary of Cape mountain zebra distribution by Province: percentage contribution to metapopulation and NDR.
- Table 3:** Cape mountain zebra sub-populations threatened by hybridisation with other equids.
- Table 4:** Cape mountain zebra population trends by management authority.
- Table 5:** Organisations that are involved in developing and implementing various aspects of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.

### LIST OF FIGURES

- Figure 1.** Cape mountain zebra natural distribution range.
- Figure 2.** Distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.
- Figure 3.** Occupied and Potential Cape mountain zebra habitats – Initial Assessment of Protected Areas in the WCP only.
- Figure 4:** IUCN Species Survival Commission (SSC) schematic for species conservation planning.
- Figure 5:** Action Plan and Monitoring Framework derived from IUCN Species Survival Commission schematic for species conservation planning methodology applied for this BMP-S.

## SCHEDULE

## 1) INTRODUCTION

The Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) is endemic to South Africa. It is a subspecies of Mountain zebra (*Equus zebra*) which historically occurred in the mountains of the Great Escarpment from the south west of Angola, through Namibia, the Northern Cape of South Africa, and the Cape Fold mountains in the Western and Eastern Cape Provinces. Gradual separation over time resulted in two distinct subspecies, namely the Hartmann's mountain zebra (*Equus zebra hartmannae*) to the north and Cape mountain zebra to the south.

Cape mountain zebra numbers declined drastically to less than 60 individuals at the beginning of the twentieth century. These animals were isolated in three locations: Cradock, Kammanassie and Gamkaberg. Conservation action has resulted in steady increases in the overall population numbers and distribution, however the residual effects of the genetic bottleneck currently threatens the long term survival of the species throughout its natural distribution range (NDR).

Cape mountain zebra now occur in a number of genetically depauperate and isolated populations and are threatened by small sub-population sizes, habitat fragmentation and by hybridisation with other equids.

Collaborative and integrated management among stakeholders, as well as public support, is required for effective management of the sub-populations to ensure the maintenance of genetic diversity and sustainable utilisation by the private sector.

## 1.1 The need for a BMP-S for Cape mountain zebra

Cape mountain zebra have a limited NDR confined to the extreme south-south west of the country. They are a near endemic to the Cape Floristic Region (Boshoff *et al.* 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Birss *et al.* 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2013), an internationally recognised global Biodiversity Hotspot (Myers *et al.* 2002).

At the end of 2015, the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation comprised approximately 4,872 individuals in 76 sub-populations throughout South Africa. Apart from the three relict sub-populations occurring on protected areas (Kammanassie Nature Reserve (NR), Gamkaberg NR and Mountain Zebra National Park), Cape mountain zebra have been reintroduced to another 9 protected areas within their NDR and 7 protected areas outside the NDR. Approximately 70% of the population occurs in state owned protected areas (Hrabar and Kerley 2015).

Cape mountain zebra is listed as VULNERABLE (D1)<sup>1</sup> by the IUCN (Novellie 2008) and recently at the 17<sup>th</sup> session of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) down-listed from on Appendix I to Appendix II, which regulates International trade, and requires a non-detriment finding (NDF) for export permits to be granted. The proposal was made because of the significant recovery in the animal's numbers – from just less than 100 individual animals in the 1990s to well over 5 000 in 2016, signifying South Africa's success in the conservation of the subspecies.

<sup>1</sup> VULNERABLE D1: A taxon is VULNERABLE (VU) when the best available evidence indicates that it meets any of the criteria VU, and it is therefore considered to be facing a high risk of extinction in the wild. This criterion identifies very small or restricted populations. A taxon qualifies for criterion D if the population of mature individuals is smaller than the threshold set for each of the categories of threat. Under the VU category there are two options, D1 and D2. A taxon qualifies for VU D1 if the population size is estimated to number fewer than 1,000 mature individuals.

## SCHEDULE

In 2011, a partnership between CapeNature, the Wilderness Foundation and the World Wildlife Fund (WWF): Table Mountain Fund (TMF), was initiated toward the drafting of a BMP-S for Cape mountain zebra. The initiative was primarily aimed at contextualising the efforts of the Mountain Zebra Working Group (MZWG) into the BMP-S, being considered the most appropriate legislative provision for realising the collective objectives and building on the successes of the MZWG, for Cape mountain zebra conservation, however, financial and logistical constraints impeded the initiative.

An inter-agency collaboration between the South African National Parks (SANParks), CapeNature and the Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (ECPTA) acknowledges the need for the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S, to ensure the long term survival of the species in nature, and to formalise the collaborative efforts of participatory parties of the MZWG.

During two consecutive stakeholder workshops (CITES NDF and initial BMP-S in 2013), threats identified included the loss of genetic diversity through inbreeding and genetic drift, diseases such as equine sarcoidosis, the risk of hybridisation, predation, poaching and emigration threats, and the absence of a metapopulation management strategy, thus the need for an integrated inter-agency cooperative, including broader stakeholder involvement, towards the objectives of a BMP-S was initiated.

The selection of the Cape mountain zebra for a BMP-S is based on the requirement of the NDF; its threatened status; the requirement for metapopulation management and inter-agency cooperation towards shared objectives for the conservation of the species; standardised monitoring; collaborative research; increased participation by landowners, and opportunities as a flagship for Protected Area expansion and stewardship initiatives.

### 1.2 Vision and desired state

The global Cape mountain zebra population is considered stable and increasing and has exceeded the previous target set in the 2002 IUCN Equid Specialist Group Status Action Plan for the Mountain Zebra (Novellie *et al.* 2002). However, the long term survival of the species is considered to be dependent on the implementation of a sound metapopulation management strategy and integrated action plans in order to mitigate the threats of inbreeding, hybridisation, loss of genetic variation, disease resilience and fragmentation.

During the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S stakeholder consultation workshop held in November 2013, the following desired state for the Cape mountain zebra was developed:

#### **The scientifically sound conservation (including regulation) of an ecologically healthy and genetically diverse metapopulation of Cape mountain zebra.**

The vision is an increasing, genetically healthy metapopulation, supporting sustainable off-takes, with an increased conservation value and private sector investment in Cape mountain zebra.

The desired state is underpinned by specific goals which guided the development of the BMP-S. These are:

1. Conservation of the Cape mountain zebra meta-population.
2. Advancement of knowledge and understanding regarding the genetic diversity of the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation.
3. Eliminate genetic contamination due to hybridisation with other equine species and safeguard Cape mountain zebra in their NDR.



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

16

**SCHEDULE**

4. Mitigate and manage the impact of current and emerging diseases.
5. Long-term monitoring of Cape mountain zebra meta-population dynamics and habitat.
6. Aligned legislation and mandates.
7. Effective communication, collaboration and coordination among stakeholders.

**1.3 Objectives of the BMP-S**

The prioritised strategic objectives of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S are as follows.

1. To maintain genetic diversity in the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation.
2. To implement monitoring and research to inform adaptive management.
3. To consistently and uniformly implement legislation, regulations, policies and guidelines.
4. To ensure effective communication, collaboration and coordination between stakeholders and the public for Cape mountain zebra conservation.

**1.4 Benefits of the BMP-S**

The envisaged benefits of implementing this BMP-S are:

- The Cape mountain zebra population remains stable and increasing.
- Scientifically-sound metapopulation management is implemented, and through this, the full extent of the genetic diversity is represented throughout the population.
- The population is ecologically healthy and secure (including being regulated effectively and efficiently).
- Implementation and maintenance of sustainable off-takes to support the NDF.
- Private sector support and investment in Cape mountain zebra conservation.

**1.5 Anticipated outcomes of the BMP-S**

The Biodiversity Management Plan for the Cape mountain zebra is aimed at identifying, allocating and undertaking the required, identified actions to enable stakeholders to contribute to the overall desired outcome of ensuring the long term survival of the subspecies in the wild and thereby ensuring the sustainable, non-detrimental harvest and off-take as an economic incentive for private land owners participating in the metapopulation strategy. The BMP-S therefore focusses on actions and strategies to strengthen the overall population performance, distribution and genetic diversity to ensure overall population fitness and resilience of the metapopulation within the NDR (and including protected areas populations outside the NDR).

The BMP-S further highlights the research and monitoring activities which will provide:

1. A snapshot of current genetic structure within and among the sub-populations.
2. Determine the phylogenetic relationships to ensure maximum biodiversity for future evolutionary change.
3. Ensure an increasing metapopulation to prevent loss of genetic variation.



## SCHEDULE

4. Sub-population source, structure, distribution, size and management data to inform adaptive implementation and management of translocations and harvesting quotas at site and national level.

## 2) SPECIES BIOLOGY AND BACKGROUND INFORMATION

### 2.1 Species ecology and biology

#### 2.1.1 Taxonomic description

**Taxon name:** *Equus zebra zebra* Linnaeus, 1758 (Novellie 2008).

**Common names:** Cape mountain zebra (English), Kaapse bergsebra / bergkwagga (Afrikaans), idauwa (isiXhosa), Dou (San), Daou (Khoikhoi) (Skinner and Chimimba 2005).

**Taxonomic level:** Subspecies

Groves and Bell (2004) investigated the taxonomy of the mountain zebras and concluded that the Cape mountain zebra and Hartmann's mountain zebra are distinct, and suggested that the two would be better classified as separate species, *Equus zebra* and *Equus hartmannae*. However, Moodley and Harley (2005) concluded that the two taxa could not be described as different species but, on the basis of their nuclear genetic distinctiveness, indicated that it is appropriate to regard them as different subspecies. That is the approach adopted for this BMP-S.

Mountain zebra are medium-sized, striped equids and differ from plains zebras (*Equus quagga*) in that the dark stripes on the head and body are narrower and more numerous and are without shadow stripes on the hindquarters. Mountain zebra has white underparts with a narrow black centre line extending over the chest and belly, a black tipped muzzle, a distinct dewlap and the markings over the sacral area form a gridiron pattern. The dewlap is more conspicuous in the Cape mountain zebra. Adult Cape mountain zebras have a shoulder height ranging from 116 to 128 cm and weigh between 204 and 372 kg (Penzhorn 1988).

#### 2.1.2 Distribution of Cape mountain zebra

Mountain zebra historically occurred in the mountainous habitats associated with the availability of fresh water on the Great Escarpment from the extreme south west of Angola, through Namibia, the Northern Cape of South Africa, and the Cape Fold belt in the Western and Eastern Cape Provinces (Novellie *et al.* 2002). A large plain of unsuitable or marginal habitat known as the Knersvlakte, (an area between the northernmost extent of the Cederberg and Bokkeveld mountain ranges, and the southernmost extent of the Kamiesberg mountain range), is postulated by Novellie *et al.* (2002) to have inhibited gene flow between those mountain zebra occurring to the north and those occurring further south. However, Boshoff *et al.* (in Skead 2011) suggests that the population segregation may have occurred further north. Irrespective of where the separation occurred, it over time resulted into two distinct subspecies, namely the Hartmann's mountain zebra to the north and Cape mountain zebra to the south (Refer to Figure 1).



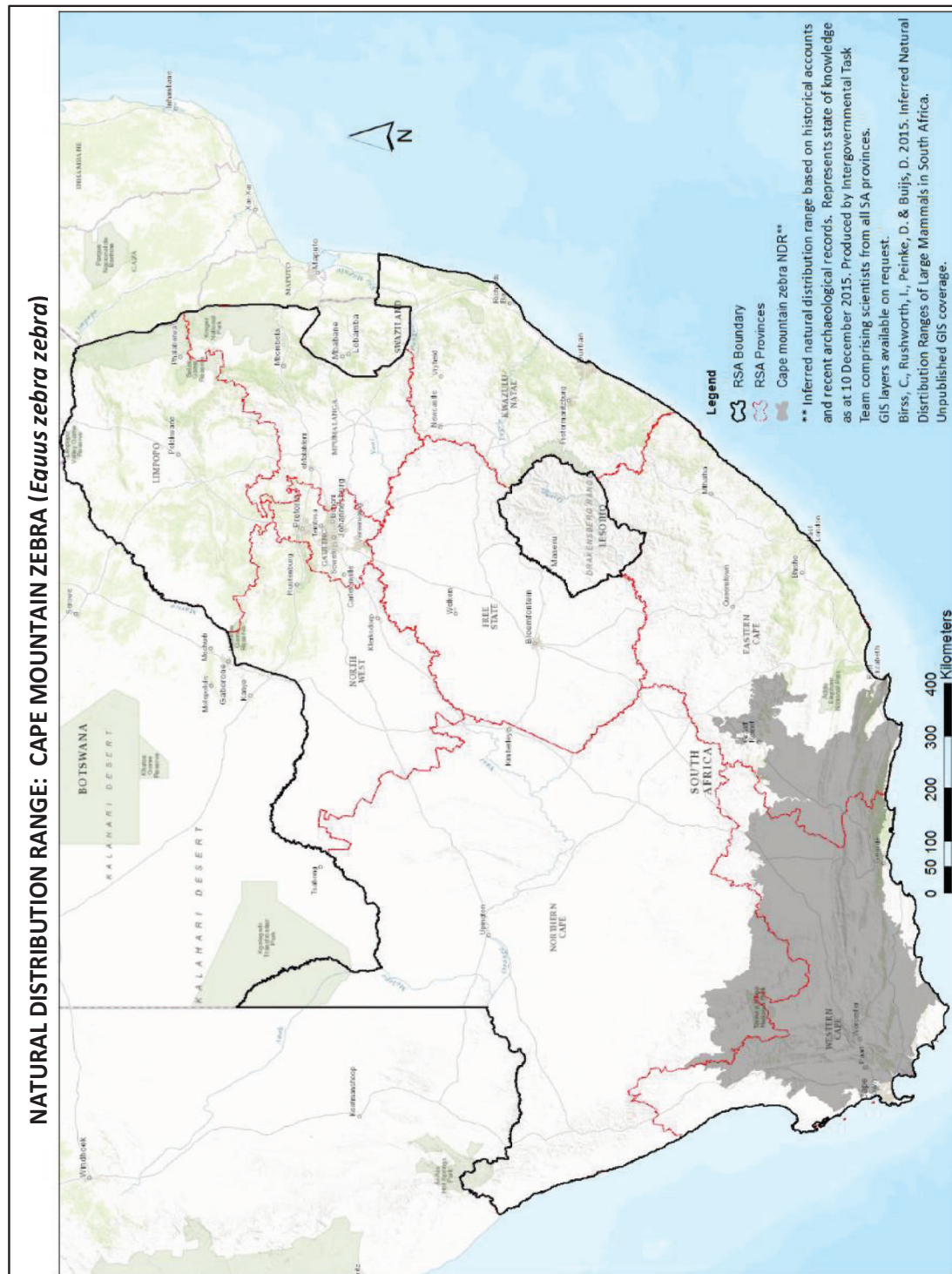


Figure 1. Cape mountain zebra natural distribution range.

Cape mountain zebra inhabit rugged, broken mountainous and escarpment areas up to 2,000 m above sea level with a diversity of grass species and perennial water (Moodley and Harley 2005, Penzhorn in press). They are predominantly grazers, only browsing during unfavourable conditions i.e. during drought. The natural distribution range of Cape mountain zebra includes the Cederberg-Bokkeveld mountain ranges, the mountains of the Great Escarpment and the Cape Fold Belt, extending eastward to Beaufort West and the Roggeveld mountains up to the Swaershoek mountains between Somerset East and Cradock and south east to include the Great and Little Winterhoek mountains near Uitenhage in the Eastern Cape (Skead 2011, Boshoff *et al.* 2015, Birss *et al.* 2015).

Hunting and habitat loss had reduced Cape mountain zebra numbers to only 58 individuals in a few relict populations by the beginning of the 20th century (Novellie *et al.* 2002, Moodley and Harley 2005, Hrabar and Kerley 2015). By 1998 the total Cape mountain zebra population had grown to approximately 1,200 animals with the largest population estimated at 250 animals, at Karoo National Park (NP) where they had been reintroduced from the relict Cradock population (Lloyd 2002; Novellie *et al.* 2002).

### 2.1.3 Status of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations

Today, Cape mountain zebra occur in a number of protected areas within their NDR, these include the Baviaanskloof Nature Reserve (NR), Mountain Zebra NP, Karoo NP, Camdeboo NP, Tankwa Karoo NP, Bontebok NP, De Hoop NR, Hottentots-Holland NR, Anysberg NR, Kammanassie NR, Gamkaberg NR and Oorlogskloof NR. The total estimated population on protected areas within the NDR is close to 2,650 individuals. A further 690 individuals occur in sub-populations outside the NDR, these include Addo Elephant NP, Table Mountain NP, West Coast NP, Commando Drift NR, Tsoelwana NR and Gariep NR. Combined, there are a total of approximately 3,391 animals in 19 sub-populations, 3 have 14 or less individuals. Refer to Table 1 for Cape mountain zebra sub-population sizes, distribution, sub-population source/s and relevant management authority in 2015.

The Cape mountain zebra populations on private land were estimated at 1,481 individuals in 2015, comprising approximately 30% of the total population (Hrabar and Kerley 2015). All are assumed to have been derived from the relict Cradock sub-population and are similarly expected to be exposed to limited gene flow. The number of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations on private land has increased notably from 38 in 2009 to 59 in 2015 and contribute significantly to an increased distribution and abundance of Cape mountain zebra. The average sub-population size increased from 25 to 29, and range from 5 to 120 individuals in a sub-population (Hrabar and Kerley 2015).

The Cape mountain zebra population has maintained an overall average growth rate of between 8.6% and 9.6% since 1985 and animals have been successfully reintroduced into various protected areas and onto private land across its former range (Novellie *et al.* 2002; Hrabar & Kerley 2015). Cape mountain zebra has also been introduced into protected areas and private land outside its former range, in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, Northern Cape and the Free State Provinces.

SANParks has nine National Parks on which Cape mountain zebra occur. Three of these parks are outside of the NDR (West Coast, Table Mountain and Addo Elephant National Parks). Table Mountain and Bontebok National Parks have small populations and due to the size of the parks will not support population growth but can form a key role in the maintenance of genetic diversity. West Coast, Addo and the remaining National Parks (Tankwa Karoo, Mountain Zebra, Karoo and Camdeboo National Parks) are of sufficient size for population growth. All of the National Parks have



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

20

### SCHEDULE

habitat in suitable condition for maintenance of Cape mountain zebra populations, given that SANParks allows for natural flux in systems and populations across space and time.

CapeNature has five Nature Reserves with Cape mountain zebra at present. Four of these reserves are suitable for the maintenance and growth of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations (Anysberg NR, Gamkaberg NR, Kammanassie NR and De Hoop NR), whilst the other Cape mountain zebra sub-population (Hottentots-Holland NR) has performed poorly and is not expected to improve.

Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency manages 3 populations of Cape mountain zebra. Commando Drift and Tsolwana Nature Reserves, which are outside of the NDR both have good habitat and have healthy and productive populations from which animals are regularly harvested for the purposes of live sale. The Baviaanskloof NR population, which is located within the natural range, has by comparison performed very poorly, and is believed to have suboptimal habitat.

The Northern Cape Province has one Provincial nature reserve with Cape mountain zebra present (Oorlogskloof NR). The habitat is marginal for Cape mountain zebra and is one of the main factors attributed to the slow population growth rate of Cape mountain zebra on the reserve. One reserve (Doornkloof NR) has also been identified as having suitable habitat for Cape mountain zebra but falls outside the NDR of the species.

Even though the Free State sub-population is outside the NDR, the habitat of Gariep NR has proven to be suitable for the maintenance of a Cape mountain zebra sub-population. The same habitat extends to Tussen die Riviere NR (Free State Province) and Oviston NR (Eastern Cape Province) and the opportunity exists to extend the Cape mountain zebra sub-population to occupy an area that would comprise approximately 45 000 ha.



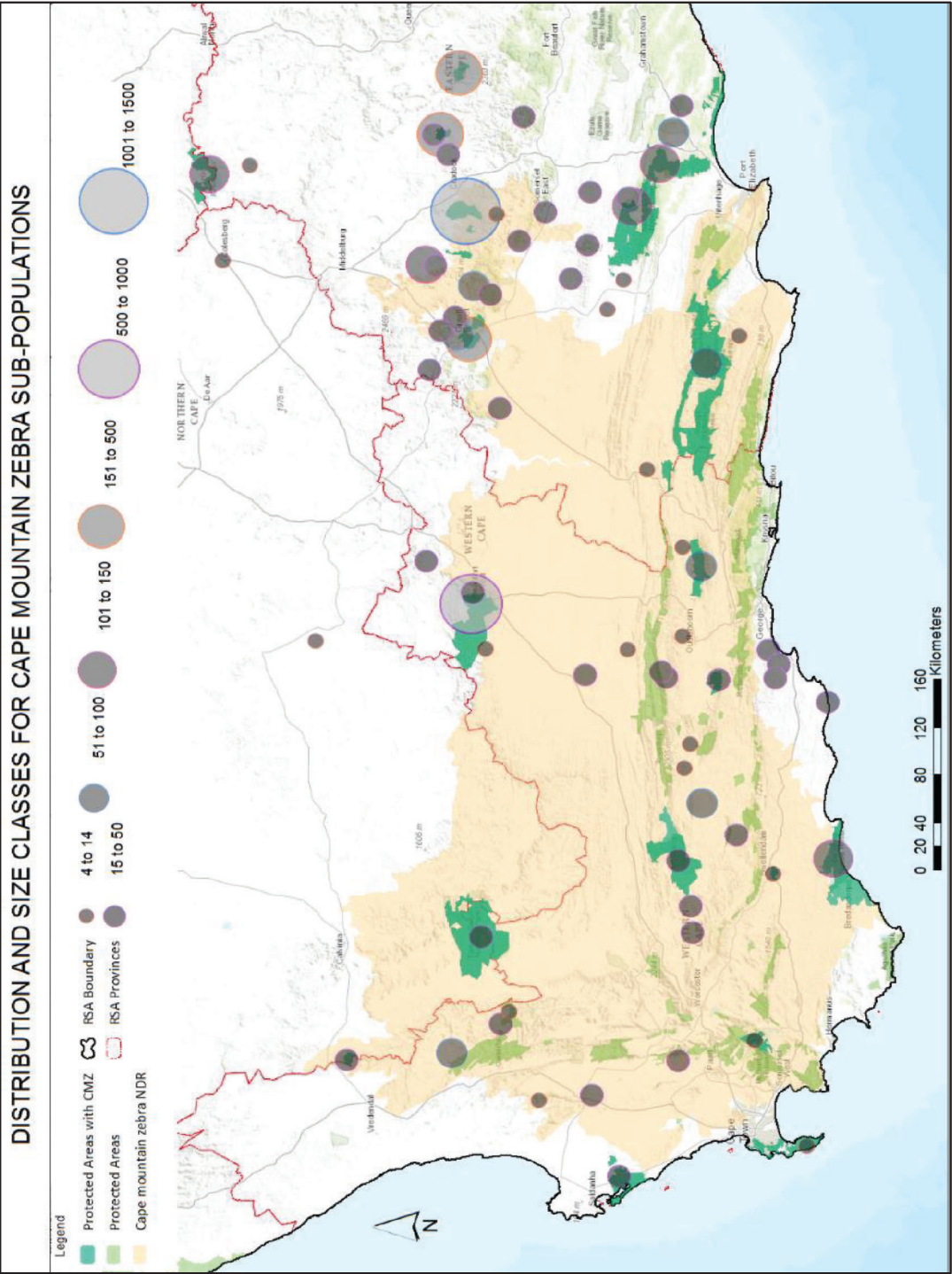


Figure 2. Distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations (Data courtesy of Dr H Hrabar and CapeNature WC GDDB)

**Table 1:** Cape mountain zebra sub-population sizes, distribution, sub-population source/s and management authority in 2015.

Property Name	Property Type	Management Authority / Conservation Agency	In Natural Distribution Range	Population Estimate	Source Population
Anysberg NR	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	21	Karoo NP
De Hoop NR Complex (Includes Overberg Test Range)	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	115	Craddock and Kammanassie NR
Gamkaberg NR	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	42	Gamkaberg NR
Hottentots-Holland NR	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	5	De Hoop NR
Kammanassie NR	Protected Area	CapeNature	Yes	70	Kammanassie NR
Oorlogskloof NR	Protected Area	Northern Cape DENC	Yes	18	Gariep NR, Bontebok NP
Tsolwana NR	Protected Area	ECPTA	No	162	Commando Drift NR (Craddock)
Commando Drift NR	Protected Area	ECPTA	No	156	Karoo NR (Craddock)
Baviaanskloof NR	Protected Area	ECPTA / CapeNature	Yes	51	Southern Cape (Craddock)
Gariep NR	Protected Area	Free State DESTEA	No	103	Craddock, Karoo NP
Karoo NP	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	842	Craddock
Tankwa Karoo NP	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	41	Craddock, Karoo NP
Mountain Zebra NP	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	1,191	Craddock
West Coast NP	Protected Area	SANParks	No	42	Craddock, Karoo NP
Bontebok NP	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	14	Craddock
Addo Elephant NP	Protected Area	SANParks	No	120	Craddock, Karoo NP
Camdeboo NP	Protected Area	SANParks	Yes	236	Craddock, Karoo NP

## SCHEDULE

Property Name	Property Type	Management Authority / Conservation Agency	In Natural Distribution Range	Population Estimate	Source Population
Table Mountain NP	Protected Area	SANParks	No	4	Cradock, Karoo NP
Addo Elephant NP (and Contractual)	Protected Area	SANParks	No	103	Cradock, Karoo NP
Private	Private	Private	Yes	750	Cradock
Private	Private	CapeNature	Yes	45	De Hoop NR
Private	Private	NC DENC / CapeNature	Yes	10	Oorlogskloof NR
Private	Private	Private	No	786	Cradock
Private	Private	Private	Unknown	Unknown	Northern Cape
<b>TOTAL</b>				<b>4,872</b>	

# Data courtesy of Dr H Hrabar and CapeNature WC GDDB

**Table 2:** Summary of Cape mountain zebra distribution by Province: percentage contribution to metapopulation and NDR.

Province	% Contribution to Cape mountain metapopulation	% Contribution to Cape mountain zebra NDR
Western Cape Province	37%	64%
Eastern Cape Province	59%	23.5%
Northern Cape Province	2%	12.5%
Free State Province	2%	0%

#### 2.1.4 Genetic status of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations

Past research mostly focused on investigating the genetic factors influencing the persistence of the Cape mountain zebra. Moodley and Harley (2005) found low genetic variability within individual Cape mountain zebra sub-populations, but that there is moderate variability within the metapopulation. They assessed the genetic status of the three relict Cape mountain zebra sub-populations, including the Cradock, Gamkaberg and Kammanassie populations. They found that the small populations are grossly inbred, with low numbers of alleles/locus and resultant low heterozygosity. As a consequence of inbreeding, genetic drift and marked reduction of genetic variation, all three relict Cape mountain zebra stocks were significantly differentiated from each other. The entire metapopulation has still maintained much of its historical variation, albeit in three separate and highly inbred stocks. It was recommended that a management strategy that supports the mixing of relict Cape mountain zebra populations be drafted in order to halt the further loss of Cape mountain zebra genetic diversity (Moodley and Harley 2005; Hrabar and Kerley 2015).

Moodley and Harley (2006) indicated that the population size of the relict sub-populations of Kammanassie and Gamkaberg Nature Reserves had not yet recovered, with estimates of 38 and 28 respectively (1999 to 2000 data), and that fundamental genetic information was required to inform conservation management strategies. They postulated that, in enduring severe and sustained

## SCHEDULE

population bottlenecks, further major losses in genetic variation are expected to occur in Cape mountain zebra populations as well as the appearance of more divergent sub-populations, due to inbreeding and genetic drift. The Cradock population, has the highest number of founder animals shows recovery from a demographic bottleneck but low genetic variation due to inbreeding was observed. This is in contrast to the Hartmann's mountain zebra. Evidence from the De Hoop population where two relict populations (Cradock and Kammanassie), both with low genetic variation, were mixed shows genetic variation comparable to that of natural free-ranging populations (where genetic bottlenecks are not indicated).

The number of individuals for the sub-populations were estimated at 70 for Kammanassie and 42 for Gamkaberg, in 2015, with a growth rate that decreased substantially, averaging at 0 to 2% over the last 10 years. This emphasises the importance of accurate population census (Birss 2016 pers comm.). Both these populations are critically important to maintain genetic diversity in Cape mountain zebra as the loss of one of these will reduce the genetic variability substantially.

The effective management of genetic diversity can be complex as the mixing of genetic material within and between populations might be necessary to avoid future loss of allelic variation. In addition, inbreeding and genetic drift may compromise genetic fitness and may lead to the extinction of some sub-populations or the sub-species. The recommendation to ensure that conservation efforts are directed at safeguarding smaller populations against isolation and limited gene flow are critical to maintain viable populations (Moodley and Harley 2005, Hill 2009).

Data collected for 58 of the 75 Cape mountain zebra sub-populations by Hrabar and Kerley (2015) identified 13 (7 protected areas and 6 private land) sub-populations as having a reduced threat of inbreeding due to founder populations being equal to or more than 14 individuals and not being exposed to hybridisation with plains zebra, and also indicates that 12 of these sub-populations co-occur with plains zebra, 3 of which are protected area populations. The Cradock population, which has the highest number of founder animals, shows recovery from a demographic bottleneck, but low genetic variation due to inbreeding was observed. It is therefore critical that sub-populations do not become isolated and that gene flow between populations is maintained or simulated to prevent further deleterious genetic consequences, including genetic drift (Moodley and Harley 2005, Hill 2009).

Hybrids of Cape mountain zebra with plains zebra have been confirmed for one protected area and recommendations for the conservation management of Cape mountain zebra include the assessment of habitat condition and management, population size, prevalence of skewed sex ratios and to develop risk averse strategies to minimise risk of future translocations and the probability of producing hybrids. Evidence that the difference in chromosomal numbers may not be a barrier to the exchange of genes between equid species warrants further research and reproductive assessments of Cape mountain and plains zebra hybrids (Dalton *et al.*, in press).

## SCHEDULE

**Table 3.** Cape mountain zebra sub-populations threatened by hybridisation with other equids (Hartmann's mountain zebra-HMZ; horses, donkeys and plains zebra-PZ.) (CapeNature 2016; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; FS DESTEa; NC DENC; ECP DEDEAT).

Property Name	Cape mountain zebra sub-population with presence of other equids	Cape mountain zebra sub-population bordering other equids
Anysberg NR	No	Yes (Horses)
De Hoop NR Complex (Includes Overberg Test Range)	No	Yes (Horses, donkeys)
Gamkaberg NR	No	No
Hottentots-Holland NR	No	No
Kammanassie NR	No	Yes (PZ)
Oorlogskloof NR	No	No
Tsolwana NR	No	Yes (HMZ)
Commando Drift NR	No	No
Baviaanskloof NR	No	No
Gariep NR	No	No
Karoo NP	Yes (PZ)	Yes (PZ)
Tankwa Karoo NP	No	Yes (PZ)
Mountain Zebra NP	Yes (PZ)	Yes
West Coast NP	No	Yes (PZ)
Bontebok NP	No	No
Addo Elephant NP	No	Unknown
Camdeboo NP	No	No
Table Mountain NP	No	No
Addo Elephant NP (Contractual)	No	No
Private (number of sub-populations known)	10	20
<b>TOTAL COUNT</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>25</b>

# Data courtesy of Dr H Hrabar and CapeNature WC GDDB

Hybridisation between Cape and Hartmann's mountain zebra (Gray 1971), due to injudicious translocations results in fertile offspring. Genetic test results for a translocation consignment between private properties confirmed hybridisations between Cape and Hartmann's mountain zebra as well in both mountain zebra sub-species and plains zebra (*Equus quagga burchelli*), (Birss, personal communication 2015).

Historically, the ranges of Cape mountain zebra would have overlapped with the now extinct sub-species of plains zebra (*Equus quagga quagga*) but habitat preferences would have caused them to rarely occur in sympatry. Introductions of the extant subspecies of plains zebra in sympatry with Cape mountain zebra onto protected areas and private land were not discouraged. It was assumed that if hybridisation does occur, offspring would be infertile due to different chromosome numbers (Dalton *et al.* 2016 in press).



## SCHEDULE

**2.1.5 Life history and reproduction**

Lloyd and Rasa (1989) attempted to determine the effects of status of the reproductive success and fitness of both males and females, and relate these findings to the sex ratios of offspring for dominant and subordinate mares, and to determine the subsequent fate of these offspring. The social structure of Cape mountain zebra was shown to be complex with very specific spatial structures. This is generally characterised by small breeding units that remain stable, both numerically and hierarchically over extended periods of time. The typical social structure is one of small harems comprising an adult stallion and one to three (maximum five) mares and their dependent foals; non-breeding groups consist primarily of bachelors, but sometimes include young fillies (Penzhorn 1984; Rasa and Lloyd 1994; Penzhorn 2016 in press). The majority of harem-forming species have a social structure typified by short male tenure periods and dispersal of male offspring only into bachelor groups.

In equids, where male herd tenure can be long, both males and females disperse; males forming a bachelor group and females either joining other breeding units. Dispersing Cape mountain zebra colts and fillies both tend to join a non-breeding group (Rasa and Lloyd 1994). Cape Mountain zebra breeding units are characterised by long stallion herd tenure, averaging 7 years, but usually for life, and breeding mares typically remain in the same breeding units until their own death or the death or sup-plantation of the breeding stallion. Since father's herd tenure and daughter's oestrus, which occurs at a relatively early age, overlap, dispersal of daughters as well as sons is an effective means of circumventing inbreeding (Penzhorn 1984; Rasa and Lloyd 1994).

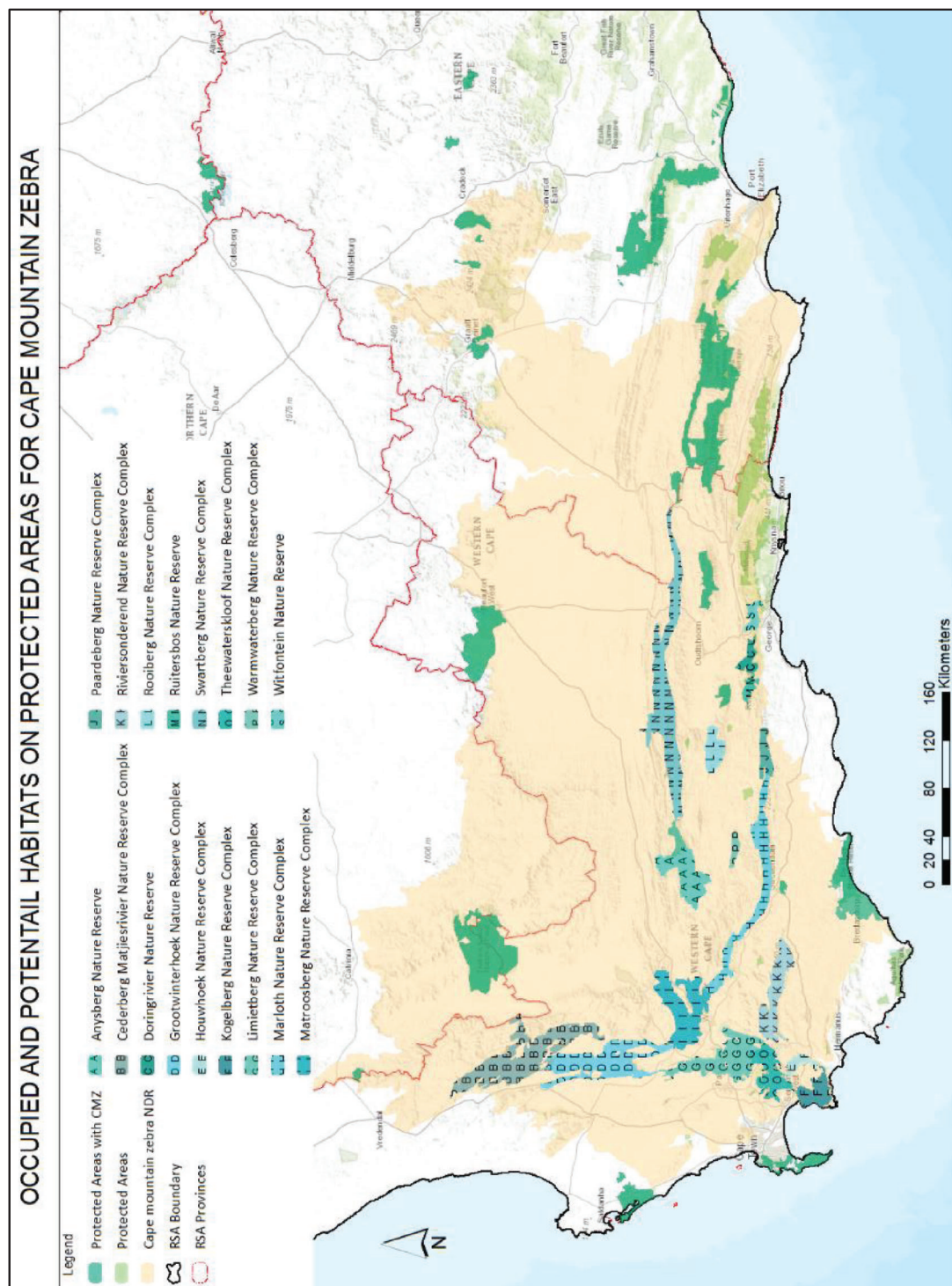
Cape mountain zebra has a low reproductive rate due to a long gestation period of approximately 12 months, after which a single foal is produced with foaling peaking in the rainy season, however, foaling can occur year round. Life expectancy is over 20 years and breeding herds remain stable for many years, averaging 1 male to 2.4 unrelated females. Socially ranked mares produce their first offspring between 4 and 5 years of age with an average foaling interval of 25 months, however, dominant mares produce significantly more offspring and mares can continue to produce up to the age of 21. Stallions remain fertile for up to 19 years. Both male and female offspring leave the herd after approximately 22 months, or within four months after the birth of a sibling, and join non-breeding groups which are important for the forming of nucleus breeding pairs (Penzhorn 1982; Penzhorn 1985; Skinner and Smithers 1990; Penzhorn and Novellie 1991).

Foal mortality is related to behavioural factors, where dominant mares attack the foals of subordinate mares, possibly causing broken legs and fatalities (Lloyd and Rasa 1989; Skinner and Smithers 1990), potentially related to competition for resources (Hrabar 2015 pers. comm.).

Cape mountain zebras are not territorial and home ranges of breeding herds overlap with seasonal variation. Home range sizes for Mountain Zebra NP were estimated to range between 3.1 – 16.0 km<sup>2</sup>, averaging 9.4 km<sup>2</sup> (Penzhorn 1982; Skinner and Smithers 1990).

**2.1.6 Habitat requirements and resource assessment**

As mentioned previously, Cape mountain zebra naturally inhabit rugged, broken mountainous and escarpment areas and are dependent on the presence of grass and perennial water. Remaining, untransformed natural areas representing these habitats are largely confined to protected areas. Cape mountain zebra seasonally migrate, where possible, between habitat types and predominantly select areas with high grass cover and limited population growth may be the result of confinement to upland areas with restricted access to year-round grass-rich habitats and drinking water.



**Figure 3.** Occupied and Potential Cape mountain zebra habitats – Initial Assessment of Protected Areas in the WCP only.

### SCHEDULE

Cape mountain zebra is regarded as a partial refugee species, as some populations have been confined to suboptimal areas of its historic range contributing to poor population performance (Lea *et al.* in press). Estimates of potential suitable biomass production in some reserves indicate that populations may have reached their optimum stocking potential. These reserves are inadequate in size or densely stocked with other game species and cannot accommodate higher densities of Cape mountain zebra (Birss and Schutte-Vlok 2015 pers comm.). Using inadequate assessments of habitat suitability may grossly over-estimate the conservation potential of existing protected areas where current populations are confined to marginal habitats. As habitats shift with land use and climate change, the current distribution of protected areas may be inappropriate to meet future conservation goals (Lea *et al.* in press). Additional protected areas within the NDR have suitable habitat, but it is essential to apply appropriate stocking models considerate of the forage production potential, climate, total game stocking, size of suitable habitat, accessibility to water and areas of high grass cover. It has also been suggested that environments transformed by agriculture may be suitable for Cape mountain zebra (Smith *et al.* 2011).

A large proportion of research conducted on Cape mountain zebra focus on habitat suitability for the species. Habitat suitability studies were conducted for Bontebok NP (Kraaij and Novellie 2010; Watson *et al.* 2011; Strauss 2015), De Hoop NR (Smith *et al.* 2007; Hurzuk 2009; Smith *et al.* 2011), Gamkaberg NR (Watson *et al.* 2005), Mountain Zebra NP (Winkler and Owen-Smith 1995) and Kammanassie NR (Watson and Chadwick 2007). All studies showed that Cape mountain zebra prefer habitat with a high grassy component, and that only small portions of these reserves have suitable habitat for the species (Hurzuk 2009; Strauss 2015). Winkler and Owen-Smith (1995) suggested that seasonal variations in vegetation communities utilised by zebra were not only influenced by changes in grass quality, but also by variations in grass quantity. It was also highlighted that habitat selection (including availability) must not be viewed in isolation since water, mineral licks, shelter, as well as social factors, are also known to influence habitat use in large herbivore species (Winkler and Owen-Smith 1995). Penzhorn and Novellie (1991) suggested that ideally conservation areas should be large with sufficient varied habitats to sustain populations throughout summer and winter. The existence of large populations of antelope could be detrimental to zebras due to interspecific competition (Hurzuk 2009). Strauss (2015) suggests that Cape mountain zebra have season-specific and site-specific feeding strategies to ensure adequate quantity and quality of forage throughout the year.

There appears to be considerable scope, >935,191 ha, for increasing the area and number of sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra (Hrabar and Kerley 2013). An assessment of the CapeNature protected areas consolidated with mountain catchment areas in the Western Cape indicates that potential habitat of <855,940 ha could be available for the reintroduction and reinforcement of a number of viable Cape mountain zebra populations, (populations >100 individuals), (Birss *et al.* 2016). However, a careful and systematic evaluation of potential sites for habitat suitability, area of suitable habitat, stocking potential, security and manageability will have to be carried out. Several Nature Reserves (some are clusters of several protected areas) have the potential to contribute significantly to new sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra including Bokkerviere NR, Cederberg NR, Matjiesrivier NR, Groot Winterhoek NR, Outeniqua NR, Rooiberg NR and Swartberg NR. Although these areas have suitable habitat, some will need additional and/or improved fencing to facilitate management of Cape mountain zebra and other species which may influence Cape mountain zebra population health.

In order to assess the priority potential sites for Cape mountain zebra in the Western Cape, CapeNature applied a two-step process to evaluate sites within its protected area network. The method starts with a desktop assessment and concludes with an on-site assessment of the habitat. This method may be used as a template for developing a more general prioritisation approach that could be applied to Cape mountain zebra across its NDR.

## SCHEDULE

### 2.1.7 Known diseases

Marais *et al.* (2007) proposed that, since the entire Cape mountain zebra population originates from a very small genepool, a reduced innate immune system diversity exists which leads to the increased susceptibility of some smaller populations to equine sarcoids. Genetic diversity and levels of heterozygosity have been shown to be lower in populations of Cape mountain zebra that are affected by sarcoids (Sasidharan 2004; Nel *et al.* 2006). Equine sarcoid is a virus causing tumours in horses and donkeys and is associated with high levels of inbreeding. It is thought to manifest in animals due to complex interactions between the aetiologic agent, the environment and the host genome. In horses, the bovine papillomavirus (BPV) types 1, 2 and 13 are involved in the pathogenesis of sarcoids (Alcântara *et al.* 2015). In a comparison of genetic parameters and sarcoid tumours in Cape mountain zebra affected populations showed low levels of heterozygosity, genetic diversity and polymorphisms. These populations were also highly inbred (Sasidharan 2004, Sasidharan *et al.* 2011).

The persistence of sarcoids in a population could potentially be linked to the social structures of herds where one stallion will breed with a harem for long periods of time (Sasidharan 2004). Tumour-affected Cape mountain zebra exhibit higher mortality rates than non-affected due to reasons that seem unrelated to any apparent climatic variations. Sasidharan (2004) recommends research on the comparative investigation on the immunological status of different Cape mountain zebra populations and epidemiological studies towards shedding more light on equine sarcoids.

Sasidharan (2004) suggests that anecdotal evidence may point to impaired immune function in Cape mountain zebra populations. Necropsy reports for Cape mountain zebra that died of disease symptomatic of African Horse Sickness (AHS) or equine encephalosis is unique in that zebras in general have been reported to be resistant to both. Equid movement quarantines for AHS are expected to impact on gene flow simulations through translocations.

Cape mountain zebra generally harbour high tick loads but no comparative studies have been done on parasitic loads between sarcoid-affected and non-affected zebras. Incidences of subclinical equine babesiosis have been reported in Cape mountain zebra (Young *et al.* 1973).

### 2.2 Population statistics and trends

The overall population growth rate of the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation has remained positive (Hrabar and Kerley 2013; Hrabar and Kerley 2015), however, not all sub-populations are maintaining a positive growth rate (Hrabar *et al.* 2015; CapeNature 2016). The mean annual rate of increase was maintained at 10% from 2002 – 2009, compared to 8.6% from 1985 to 1995 (Novellie *et al.* 1996), 9.6% from 1995 and 1998 (Novellie *et al.* 2002) and 8.4% from 1998 and 2002.

It should be noted that when assessing population numbers and their changes over time, that due to the unknown error around the estimates for the count of the entire population it is difficult to assess the accuracy of the trends or to be able to put confidence bounds around the increase figures.

In total the Cape mountain zebra population is estimated to have increased by 75% (from 2,790 to 4,872 individuals) over the period 2009 to 2015 (Hrabar and Kerley 2015) which translates to an average annual increase of 11%. Historical national population growth figures were as follows: from 1985 to 1995: 8.6% and from 1995 to 1998: 9.6% (Novellie *et al.* 2004).





**SCHEDULE****Table 4:** Cape mountain zebra population trends by management authority.

Province	Number of sub-populations	Population estimate	Population trend	Challenges or threats
SANParks	9	2,593 (1,089 in 2010 to 2,525 in 2015)	11.8% average increase	Low genetic diversity, predation effects unknown, hybridisation, sarcoids
ECPTA	3	369 (261 in 2007 to 369 in 2015)	9% average increase	Low genetic diversity
CapeNature	5	253 (228 in 2010 to 253 in 2015)	1.12% average increase	Poor population performance, hybridisation, habitat insecure, habitat alteration (water abstraction)
FS DESTEA	1	103 (45 in 2004 to 103 in 2015)	6.5% average increase <sup>4</sup>	Low genetic diversity
NC DENC	1	18	1.33% average increase	Low genetic diversity, sarcoids, poor population performance, insecure habitat, management and regulatory capacity constraints
Private	55	1,481 (946 in 2010 to 1,481 in 2015)	9.47% average increase	Low genetic diversity

**2.3 Research**

A scientific literature review has produced a list of important research findings, outcomes and recommendations to be taken into account in designing action plans for this BMP-S. These research findings and recommendations are incorporated into the relevant sections of this document.

The National Zoological Gardens of South Africa (NZG), a declared National Research Facility of the National Research Foundation (NRF) since 2004, is uniquely placed to generate new knowledge, core technologies and data pools/collections commensurate with international standards. It now has a critical mass of equipment, skills and users and the potential for networking and attracting collaboration. The facility offers unique opportunities for the advancement of science and for an interface between science and the public, and the additional provision of opportunities for skills development. Within the broad strategic context of

## SCHEDULE

the NZG, the thematic driver for research focuses on ways to attract, develop and retain talent and to uphold excellence in all investments in knowledge, people and infrastructure. In its role as a national research facility, the NZG assist agencies and organisations, in collaboration, to fulfil their collective mandates for the conservation of biodiversity, ultimately enhancing the collective efforts in southern Africa for the conservation of regional biodiversity (Kotze and Nxomani 2011).

The NZG's strength is bringing together expertise from a variety of disciplines in synergy and an interdisciplinary approach rarely encountered in other research institutions. This strength is supported by appropriate human capacity, infrastructure and sustained funding for core scientific activities in both conservation biology and wildlife health.

The NZG has built up a unique resource to conduct and promote molecular genetic research in Africa, in response to a need to understand the relationships between the degree of genetic diversity, molecular diagnostics, phylogenetics and genetic factors that determine population viability of threatened species as a result of habitat fragmentation. National genetic databases have been established for a variety of species, including bontebok (*Damaliscus pygargus pygargus*), and are being expanded for species such as Cape mountain zebra.

The implementation of effective metapopulation management for Cape mountain zebra aimed at conserving and maximising genetic diversity (inclusive of reproductive vigour and disease resilience) of the metapopulation, with due consideration of the potential deleterious genetic consequences, is heavily reliant on the undertaking to implement focussed applied research in partnership with the NZG.

### 2.4 Utilisation and socio-economic context

The decimation of wildlife through trophy hunting by early settlers and explorers in the 19<sup>th</sup> century promoted the recognition among some hunters of the need to protect remaining game populations (Lindsey *et al.* 2007). Van Stittert (2005) suggests that the privatisation and commercialisation of wild "game" animals was already well-advanced in the Cape in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century and driven by the ostrich feather trade and local demand for meat and skins, and in the twentieth by commercial sport hunting. Formally protected Nature Reserves were an anomaly in the Cape. After establishment, public game reserves were reallocated for farming and were restricted where they survived at all.

Ostrich domestication was a watershed in the wild animal history of the Cape. The recognition of land owner rights and suppression of itinerant hunting and trading in game provided an effective legal monopoly over game animals that could be converted into either profit or patronage resulting in steady enclosure of private farms in the east and north (Transvaal) after 1883, financed by profits from the ostrich feather boom. The first record of a farmer fencing part of his farm to protect animals refers to Mr Alexander van der Byl who enclosed bontebok on approximately 2,500 ha near Bredasdorp. The establishment of National Parks by central government due to the potential tourism value and precarious position of the remnant royal game in the Cape was intended to rescue the surviving gemsbok (*Oryx gazella*) (Gordonia), bontebok (Bredasdorp) and elephant (*Loxodonta africana*) (Uitenhage/Alexandria) in 1931, and Cape mountain zebra (Cradock) in 1937, from the threat of 'provincial prejudice' and private parsimony by creating a national park for each animal (Van Stittert 2005; Du Toit 2012).

Examples of conservation success by private land owners (including wildlife ranchers) commonly cited are the cases of the southern white rhinoceros (*Ceratotherium simum simum*), bontebok, black wildebeest (*Connochaetes gnou*), Cape mountain zebra and the geometric tortoise (*Psammobates geometricus*) (Lindsey *et al.* 2007; Cousins *et al.* 2008). Cousins *et al.* (2008) states that the maintenance of natural areas through wildlife ranching is obviously beneficial to conservation and protects habitat from radical transformation and



### SCHEDULE

also provides additional space which supports formal conservation as ranchers become “custodians of components of metapopulations” for a variety of species, both introduced and non-introduced.

The role of wildlife ranching for landscape level conservation, in general, is thought to be essential due to the limited government funding available for conservation, however, the practicality of ranching wildlife for conservation is challenging. In addition to the challenges of combining economic gain with conservation objectives, ranchers are often faced with relatively smaller enclosed areas and this necessitates the need for intensively managed wildlife populations. In order to enhance the role of wildlife ranching within conservation, clear guidance and support for ranchers is likely to be required to boost endorsement and minimise economic loss to ranchers (Cousins *et al.* 2008; Lindsey *et al.* 2007).

Hrabar and Kerley (2013; 2015) report that the most common motivation for stocking Cape mountain zebra on private land was for the conservation of the species and the least common motivation was hunting. Private land stakeholders, however, have expressed aspirations for Cape mountain zebra derived incentives through hunting, trading and stocking accessibility (Birss personal communication 2016) as well as stocking of Cape mountain zebra on private land, outside of their NDR (Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Taylor *et al.* 2016).

Hunting of Cape mountain zebra by South African hunters and land owners for population management and ecotourism purposes is permitted and granted by the relevant provincial conservation authorities on the merit of applications. Cape mountain zebra, being listed on CITES, requires a positive NDF in order to allocate hunting quotas for international export and in some cases additional requirements may include enhancement findings (i.e. United States of America: Endangered Species Act) – this limits accessibility of international clients to hunt Cape mountain zebra.

According to Lindsey *et al.* (2007), South Africa has the largest hunting industry in Africa in terms of number of operators, visiting hunters, animals shot and revenues generated, however, also cautions that the value of wildlife trophies create pressure for the issuance of large and increasing CITES quotas. Further, they refer to the insistence by hunters and hunting advocates that trophy hunting is of major importance for conservation in Africa, involves low off-takes, high prices and is sustainable, thus plays a role in creating incentives for the conservation of threatened species, but that CITES restrictions on trophy exports impose limitations on revenues from trophy hunting and incentives gained from restricted species. Discussions concerning trophy hunting are polarised which is exacerbated by the lack of reliable data on the impact of trophy hunting.

## 2.5 Conservation measures

Historically, excessive hunting as well as habitat loss and fragmentation due to agriculture reduced Cape mountain zebra numbers to less than 80 individuals in just three localities in the 1950s. Since the 1950s the number of Cape mountain zebra has gradually increased through translocations to ensure continued population growth and genetic diversity (Novellie *et al.* 2002). By 2002, the Cape mountain zebra population totalled >1 600 individuals in six national parks, 10 provincial reserves and 17 private reserves distributed across most of their natural range (Castley *et al.* 2002). According to Hrabar and Kerley (2015) over 70% of the national population is strictly protected within National Parks and provincial Nature Reserves.

The two smallest remnant populations of Cape mountain zebra occur in the Kammanassie and Gamka Mountains. The registered title deeds recognising the State Forest portions of the Kammanassie date back to 1878, the area was then known as the Langkloof State Forest (Schutte-Vlok *et al.* 2012). The earliest records of Cape mountain zebra census dates back to July 1986 when the Kammanassie NR was still managed by the National Department of Forestry. Kammanassie only became part of the provincial department during



### SCHEDULE

1988, and prior to this very little attention had been given to the Cape mountain zebra population on this NR. When the reserve was established in 1978 the estimated number of Cape mountain zebra was six (Odendal 1978). The earliest record of Cape mountain zebra on the Kammanassie mountain dates back to 1949, with a total of 15 animals recorded. Today the population is estimated at 70 animals (Cleaver 2004).

Gamkaberg NR was purchased by the Department of Nature and Environmental Conservation in 1974 for the express purpose of conserving, in their natural habitat, the remaining population of Cape mountain zebra occurring there (Barry *et al.* 2016). The Gamkaberg population was estimated at 42, in 2015, from a founder population of 6 animals (Barry *et al.* 2016).

Challenges around the survival of the Gamkaberg population include limited suitable habitat as they are fenced within the approximately 10 000 ha with limited availability of water during the dry months. The recent addition of the Fontein property means that the Cape mountain zebra now have access to two additional reliable borehole water points (Barry *et al.* 2016)

Cape mountain zebra occurred on the Outeniqua NR (established in 1936) but this population went extinct in the early 1970s possibly due to translocations and poaching was largely uncontrolled (Lloyd 1984).

In 1956 and 1957, the then Cape Provincial Administration purchased the properties De Hoop and Windhoek, east of Bredasdorp, and later the farm The Nook was added. The original De Hoop NR was proclaimed in 1957, as the first Provincial nature reserve, and used as an experimental game breeding farm (Scott and Scott 2002). The De Hoop Cape mountain zebra population was estimated at 115, in 2015, and animals move between De Hoop NR and the adjacent Denel Overberg Test Range. Ten animals were introduced to De Hoop in the 1970s, five from Mountain zebra NP and five from Kammanassie (Hey 1995). They are subject to low incidence of sarcoid tumour caused by the bovine papillomavirus (BVP) DNA types (Novellie *et al.* 2002; Sasidharan 2005).

In 1999, nine Cape mountain zebra from Karoo NP were introduced into the Anysberg NR at Vrede Valley. On 16 August 2004, a further eight zebra from Karoo NP was released into the reserve. Today the Cape mountain zebra sub-population is estimated at 21 animals. In 2012, the Anysberg NR was expanded by 12,832 ha with assistance from WWF-SA and funding from the Leslie Hill Succulent Karoo Trust, and this has increased the reserve to over 80 000 ha in size (Schutte-Vlok 2015).

#### 2.5.1 The Mountain Zebra Working Group (MZWG)

A further overview of past conservation measures for Cape mountain zebra indicates that the conservation management of the South African Cape mountain zebra metapopulation is shared by five conservation agencies, namely SANParks (a parastatal organisation responsible for the management of South Africa's National Parks), CapeNature (public entity of the Western Cape Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning), Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency (public entity of the Eastern Cape Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism), the Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation and the Free State Department of Economic, Small business development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs.

The MZWG was established to coordinate the conservation of mountain zebras in South Africa. Initially the focus was on the Cape mountain zebra, but was later expanded to include the Hartmann's mountain zebra in South Africa. The MZWG acted as a national body of interested and affected parties established to implement the Action Plan for Mountain Zebra as outlined in *Equids: zebras, asses and horses – status survey and conservation action plan*, published by the IUCN Equid Specialist Group in 2002. The primary role of the MZWG was to ensure that mountain zebra populations in South Africa are regularly monitored and to revise



**SCHEDULE**

the strategy outlined in the Action Plan, when necessary. The MZWG has not officially been active since 2010 although much of the intentions of the working group had been adopted by participatory conservation agencies, either through policy or management commitment. Doctor Halszka Hrabar and Professor Graham Kerley, associated with the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, Port Elizabeth, have been primarily responsible for regular population status reports and liaison with private land owners, conservation agencies and conservation managers towards maintaining the momentum of the MZWG mandate.

The MZWG adopted a Terms of Reference which was aimed at *inter alia*:

1. To coordinate the future conservation of mountain zebras in South Africa;
2. To act as local body of interested and affected parties whose mandate is to implement the Equid Specialist Group Action Plan for Mountain Zebra as outlined by Novellie *et al.* (2002);
3. To monitor mountain zebra populations on a regular basis, and to revise the strategy outlined in the Action Plan when and where necessary using the monitoring information obtained;
4. To ensure appropriate implementation of the Action Plan, as well as scientific advisory personnel to ensure the Action Plan is followed and that the necessary revisions and any other sources of relevant information are brought to the attention of those responsible for implementation; and
5. Recognising the role that private landowners played historically in saving this animal from extinction, promoting a spirit of co-operation with current and future landowners, and regularly communicating relevant information to the private sector to achieve this goal.

Conservation management policies were developed and adopted by provincial conservation agencies for the translocation and hunting of Cape mountain zebra (the latter dating back to the early 1980s). Protocols for the monitoring of Cape mountain zebra in various reserves were developed and distributed in order to coordinate this matter and produce a reliable database on population status. A draft protocol for assessing the habitat of any receiving property was also developed.

In 2010 attempts to reconvene the MZWG failed and therefore CapeNature in partnership with SANParks initiated the BMP-S process, aiming to disband the MZWG in favour of a BMP-S steering committee and to drive towards a stakeholder workshop to draft a BMP-S for the Cape mountain zebra.

At present there is no formal management plan for Cape mountain zebra. SANParks currently has no specific management strategy for Cape mountain zebra, and management follows the general policy for the management of large mammals in SANParks. The Mountain Zebra and Karoo National Parks, which have the largest populations, have been increased greatly in area over the past decade, and consequently the Cape mountain zebra populations have been expanding in these parks. Both parks have introduced lions and other large predators, and their impact on the mountain zebra populations are being monitored (Novellie, personal communication).

An inter-agency collaboration between SANParks, CapeNature and ECPTA acknowledges the need for the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S, to ensure the long term survival of the species in nature, and to formalise the collaborative efforts of participatory parties of the MZWG.

CapeNature, in partnership with SANParks and the Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, initiated a process to develop a BMP-S for Cape mountain zebra, in terms of the NEM: BA, in collaboration with the Northern Cape Department of Environment and Nature Conservation, the National Zoological Gardens of

### SCHEDULE

South Africa and the Free State Department of Economic, Small business development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs.

Finally, in the development of this BMP-S, it is envisaged that the governance of Cape mountain zebra metapopulation management and the implementation of the BMP-S will be taken over by a BMP-S steering committee, including regulatory and other conservation authorities to provide oversight and accountability for the implementation of actions as detailed in the Action Tables.

#### 2.5.2 Metapopulation management

A metapopulation is defined as a group of geographically isolated populations of the same species that may exchange individuals through dispersal, migration or, when implemented as a management strategy, human-controlled movement and the availability of empty habitats that are largely connected (Hanski 1999; Olivier *et al.* 2009). Implementation of human-mediated metapopulations becomes necessary when individuals no longer have the ability to move between patches or to recolonise empty patches (Akçakaya *et al.* 2007). The implementation of metapopulation processes may improve the persistence of mammals in fragmented habitats (Olivier *et al.* 2009). The managed metapopulation approach has been proposed for large herbivores in South Africa, where extensive areas are needed to hold a viable population (Elmhage and Angerbjörn 2001). Akçakaya *et al.* (2007) propose that what conservation needs is not necessarily metapopulations *per se*, but the metapopulation approach and concepts, which allow for the assessment of the persistence of a species that happens to exist in a metapopulation, either naturally or due to habitat loss and fragmentation.

Elmhage and Angerbjörn (2001) suggested a managed metapopulation approach as a means to solve problems of inbreeding in small, isolated populations with a high extinction risk, when:

1. There are discrete habitat patches large enough to hold breeding sub-populations (Hanski 1999); and
2. Ecological processes that work on both local and regional (metapopulation) scales (Hanski 1999).

Elmhage and Angerbjörn (2001) cautioned against the assumption that all populations with patchy distributions and some degree of connectivity are metapopulations. They emphasise the importance to investigate the demographic properties of sub-populations in different population networks, on a case by case basis in order to contribute to the conservation and management of large mammals in fragmented habitats. In addition to human-mediated dispersal through reintroduction and translocation, dispersal can be increased by conserving or restoring the habitat between existing populations. This can reduce local extinctions by facilitating the 'rescue effect' of colonization, and it can increase the rate of recolonization following local extinction. One example to increase the overall persistence of the species is linking populations through habitat corridors (Akçakaya *et al.* 2007).

Effective metapopulation management for Cape mountain zebra by the conservation agencies involved (see above), should aim to conserve the allelic diversity and promote and maintain genetic diversity within and between the relevant sub-populations of the metapopulation, in particular the potential loss of rare alleles in the isolated relict populations at Kammanassie and Gamkaberg, either caused by genetic drift or genetic swamping. Genetic data are often used to assess "population connectivity" because it is difficult to measure dispersal directly at large spatial scales, however, estimates of genetic divergence alone provide little information on demographic connectivity (Allendorf *et al.* 2012). "Genetic rescue" is considered to play a crucial role in the persistence of small natural populations and is an effective conservation tool under certain circumstances, however, the occurrence of outbreeding depression following heterosis in the first generation in some cases indicates that care is needed when considering the source of populations for rescue (Allendorf *et al.* 2012).



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

### SCHEDULE

It has been recommended by various authors (Hrabar *et al.* 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2013; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Hill 2009; Sasidharan *et al.* 2011; Moodley and Harley 2006) that the three relic populations should be mixed. With due consideration to the potential deleterious genetic consequences as indicated by Frankham *et al.* (2002) and Allendorf *et al.* (2012), introductions into either Kammanassie and or Gamkaberg sub-populations must be avoided and alternative locations for mixing and monitoring the effects of mixing must be considered. In this regard, it would be recommended that the mixing of sub-populations first takes place between those contained in state-owned protected areas, for proper monitoring of the result, before translocations to private properties are considered.

As animals are available to be sourced from the De Hoop NR, Gamkaberg NR and Kammanassie NR populations, new populations derived from various mixtures of these source animals and carefully selected numbers of Cradock-source animals should be established. These new populations should be introduced into the top priority sites as determined by the prioritisation and site selection criteria listed in this BMP-S.

More than 40 individuals in various groups have escaped from De Hoop NR and now occur on private land. In some instances these animals are being persecuted and poached. Hybridisation with horses and donkeys have been observed (Marais 2015).

The Cape mountain zebra metapopulation comprises the following four main elements:

1. A good number of widely distributed sub-populations derived from the Cradock lineage that form the bulk of the Cape mountain zebra population (including private land sub-populations),
2. The Gamkaberg NR population,
3. The Kammanassie NR population,
4. The De Hoop population which is a Cradock- and Kammanassie-derived population which does still represent rare alleles from the Kammanassie population (Moodley and Harley 2006).

Finally, the management and monitoring of the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation should be guided by this BMP-S and all agencies and eventually, private and corporate landowners, should strive to promote the conservation of the Cape mountain zebra. Only a collaborative and focused science-based effort, supported by sound management principles and best practice will ensure the success and future survival of the species.

It appears from the available body of knowledge, that many and rather specific recommendations to improve the survival of Cape mountain zebra in the wild and within its NDR have been made throughout the years, but that little action has been taken in this regard.

### 2.5.3 Non-detriment finding (NDF)

Hrabar and Kerley (2015) estimate that the potential Cape mountain zebra population on occupied private land could have been between 2,205 and 2,427 individuals in 2015. They also indicated that the most common motivation for stocking Cape mountain zebra on private land was for the conservation of the species while the least common motivation was hunting. However, during a workshop convened by SANBI in order to prepare a Non-detriment Finding, private land stakeholders expressed aspirations for Cape mountain zebra derived incentives through hunting, trading and stocking accessibility (Birss personal communication 2016). Although hunting by South African hunters and land owners for population management and ecotourism purposes is permitted and granted on the merit of applications, Cape mountain zebra, being listed on CITES, requires a positive Non-detriment Finding in order to allocate hunting quotas for export – thus limits accessibility of international clients to hunt Cape mountain zebra.

### SCHEDULE

In May 2015 the Scientific Authority of South Africa, as established in terms of Section 60(1) of the NEM: BA, conducted an NDF assessment for the Cape mountain zebra in terms of the CITES Regulations (Equ\_zeb\_zeb\_May2015). As stated previously, the purpose of this NDF was to assess whether or not the trade (international) in Cape mountain zebra is likely to have a detrimental impact on the population(s) of the species.

The NDF undertaken for the Cape mountain zebra demonstrates that legal local and international trade in live animals and the export of hunting trophies at present poses a moderate to high risk to the survival of this subspecies in South Africa. It continues to state that if a small hunting quota were to be introduced, it would in all likelihood increase the economic value of the Cape mountain zebra, which is anticipated to generate species and habitat conservation incentives. Subsequently, if the Cape mountain zebra had a higher economic value, there would be more of an incentive to conserve the subspecies and limit the introduction of alternative high-value extra-limital species that can lead to habitat deterioration.

Recommendations from the NDF include the development and effective implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape mountain zebra to improve metapopulation management and the parallel implementation of a small cautious hunting quota supported by a population viability analysis which considers genetic diversity within the population, with effective monitoring and research (Scientific Authority. 2015).

The intention of this BMP-S is to promote the conservation and future survival in the wild of the Cape mountain zebra within its NDR with the actions flowing from the planning process to achieve this goal.

#### 2.5.4 Population viability analysis

Local extinction refers to the extinction of a single population in a spatially separate patch, global extinction refers to the loss of all members of a species in all of its constituent populations, and quasi-extinction (Ginsberg *et al.* 1982) to the risk of decline below a specified population size within some specified time (Lindenmayer and Burgman 2005). Population viability analysis is a modelling tool which is used to predict the likelihood of a population reaching a minimum size and threshold in the future. Ginzburg *et al.* (1982) cautioned decision makers to ensure a good understanding of predictive modelling and to, not merely rely on experts' ability to obtain a result or the interpretation of a final conclusion. Previous models (using a quasi-extinction threshold of 10 individuals at the time horizon of 50 years) deployed for both Kammanassie and Gamkaberg Cape mountain zebra sub-populations, indicated that the viability of the Gamkaberg NR was uncertain and argued that limited suitable habitat and the absence of regular fires increased the probability of quasi-extinction (based on population growth rates between 1973 and 2004). The predicted low probability of a quasi-extinction for the Kammanassie sub-population is influenced by rapid population growth after the series of fires from 1997 onwards, and above average rainfall. Although the study suggests that the risk of quasi-extinction of the Cape mountain zebra sub-populations were relatively low over the next 50 years, it was still higher than expected and highly dependent on environmental factors and management decisions (Watson *et al.* 2005, Watson and Chadwick 2007). This risk is exacerbated by small population sizes, inbreeding and competition with other species for suitable habitat (Penzhorn and Novellie 1991; Novellie *et al.* 2002, Watson *et al.* 2005, Watson and Chadwick 2007).

The main management recommendations to reduce this risk of quasi-extinctions of Cape mountain zebra include:

- Deliberate mixing of relict populations in order to maintain and improve genetic diversity;
- Re-enforcement of existing populations prioritised over the establishment of new populations;
- Regulation of translocations to prevent hybridisation;





**SCHEDULE**

- Research into the implications of disease and disease risk management;
- Translocation of animals to other protected areas;
- Acquisition of land adjacent to protected areas with Cape mountain zebra;
- Changing fire management in the habitat preferred by Cape mountain zebra to increase the availability of palatable grasses; and
- Formation of conservancies with adjacent landowners.

(Novellie *et al.* 2002; Moehlman 2002; Moodley and Hartley 2005; Watson *et al.* 2005; Watson and Chadwick 2007; Sasidharan *et al.* 2011; Hrabar *et al.* 2011; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Strauss 2015).

The 2002 IUCN Status and Action Plan for the Mountain Zebra *Equus zebra* (Novellie *et al.* 2002) suggested a Cape mountain zebra population target of 2,500. This number, now exceeded, needs to be reassessed (Hrabar and Kerley 2013). Kerley *et al.* (2003) suggests Cape mountain zebra population targets of 7,249 for pre-transformation areas and 5,194 excluding transformed areas within the NDR in the Cape Floristic Region. The population estimate of 4,791, in 2015, of which 3,268 occurs on protected areas, could potentially increase by 3,240 on protected areas in the NDR, in the long term, with the effective implementation of a sound metapopulation strategy, thereby indicating that a target population of 6,500 on protected areas may be an attainable goal (Birss *et al.* 2016).

During 2015 and 2016, SANBI convened a number of workshops to facilitate the development of Cape mountain zebra population simulation models to inform formal evaluation of management strategies (including harvesting). The workshops introduced the basic principles of the Management Strategy Evaluation (MSE) framework. The model allows for the monitoring of off-takes of various age and sex ratios under different management strategies. From this information robust quantitative analysis can be conducted to provide advice on selective hunting quotas and introduction strategies or relocations schemes to achieve the targets considered for optimal resource use (Winker 2016a).

A time-series analysis of long-term established mountain zebras within protected areas was aimed at: (1) to predict and forecast the absolute numbers of long-term protected subpopulations, (2) to determine the average rate of increase across populations and (3) to provide robust population trend estimates, and associated uncertainties, with implications for the IUCN Red list status. The estimated global mean of the rate of increase across the 10 subpopulations was 6.9% per annum and suggests a potential further increase of at least 4,073 animals by 2025, depending on the availability of habitat (Winker 2016b).

Incorporating carrying capacity limits into forward projections is expected to constrain future growth potential of the nine identified source populations. To maintain rates of increase in source population numbers, the expansion of available land or the founding of new source populations on suitable land will be required (Winker 2016c).

The development and implementation of site and national level MSE models to provide decision support for the evaluation of off-takes is recommended. These models should support the implementation of a CITES quota, providing for constant monitoring and evaluation. A hunting quota determined through a population viability analysis that considers genetic diversity within the population is being developed and the implementation thereof will be monitored through a research project.

## 2.6 Conservation status and legislative context

In South Africa, legislative jurisdiction regarding the conservation and management of wildlife is shared between the national and provincial governments. The Constitution mandates that “nature conservation, excluding National Parks, national botanical gardens and marine resources,” is one of the functional areas in which there is concurrent national and provincial legislative jurisdiction.



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

South Africa has nine provinces: Eastern Cape, Free State, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West, and Western Cape. A great deal of legislative and executive jurisdiction over issues of conservation and management of wildlife, including regulation of imports and exports, is exercised by these provincial governments. National government wields significant legislative jurisdiction over the protection of wildlife, in large part to create national uniformity on the matter.

The NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation put in place protections for various species that are threatened or otherwise in need of protection. It also provides the authority for consolidating fragmented biodiversity legislation in the country through the establishment of national norms and standards specific to certain particularly vulnerable animals. Enforcement of the NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation is shared across various tiers of government (Goitom 2013).

### 2.6.1 International obligations

#### The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)

South Africa is a Party to the CBD. Parties to the CBD adopted the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity 2011-2020, in 2010 in Nagoya, Japan, with the purpose of inspiring broad-based action in support of biodiversity over the following decade by all countries and stakeholders. In recognition for the urgent need for action the United Nations General Assembly also declared 2011-2020 as the United Nations Decade on Biodiversity. The Strategic Plan is comprised of a shared vision, a mission, strategic goals and 20 targets and serves as a framework for the establishment of national and regional targets, promoting the three objectives of the CBD.

The development and implementation of this BMP-S addresses Strategic Goal C: Improve the status of biodiversity by safeguarding ecosystems, species and genetic diversity. This BMP-S specifically aims to contribute to the Target 12: By 2020 the extinction of known threatened species has been prevented and their conservation status, particularly to those in decline, has been improved and sustained. This target specifically related to IUCN listed threatened species and has two components:

- Preventing extinction. Preventing extinction entails that those species which are currently threatened do not move into the extinct category; and
- Improving the conservation status of threatened species. An improvement in conservation status would entail a species increasing in population to a point where it moves to a lower threat status.

Progress towards this target would help reach other targets contained in the Strategic Plan, including Target 13. Further actions taken towards this target could also help to implement commitments related to the species focussed multilateral agreements such as CITES (CBD 2013).

#### The World Heritage Convention

Cape mountain zebra occur on 7 protected areas within the Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site: Table Mountain NP, Anysberg NR, Kammanassie NR, Gamkaberg NR, Theewaterskloof NR and the Baviaanskloof NR.

#### IUCN Red List

In 2008, the IUCN Red List status for Cape mountain zebra changed from “Endangered” to “Vulnerable” (VU D1) as the total population was estimated at approximately 500 mature individuals and increasing.

#### CITES



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA



### SCHEDULE

South Africa is a Party to the CITES, which thus governs and controls South Africa's international trade in CITES-listed species. The Cape mountain zebra is listed in Appendix I of CITES i.e. species threatened with extinction which are or may be affected by trade. Refer to South Africa's CITES Regulations (see below).

#### 2.6.2 National legislation

##### NEM: BA

The NEM: BA gives effect to the constitutional commitment to take reasonable legislative measures that promote conservation by providing for the management and conservation of biological diversity and the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources.

##### Threatened or Protected Species (ToPS) Regulations, 2007

The ToPS Regulations, 2007, promulgated in terms of NEM: BA came into force in February 2008. The regulations provide for the protection of species that are threatened or in need of protection to ensure their survival in the wild and give effect to the Republic's obligations. At the time of writing (February 2016), the ToPS Regulations are going through a comprehensive process of review, amendment and repeal.

##### CITES Regulations, 2010

The CITES Regulations under NEM: BA came into force in March 2010. The regulations give effect to South Africa's obligations as a signatory to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (see above) insofar as creating a permitting system to regulate the international trade (import, export and re-export) of listed species (live animals as well as specimens / products) as well as concomitant administrative, compliance and enforcement structures.

In terms of Regulation 6(3)(c) of the CITES Regulations (read with Article IV of the CITES (Convention) and Section 1 of the NEM: BA), an export permit shall only be granted for an Appendix I (or II) listed species when a Scientific Authority of the State of export has advised that such export will not be detrimental to the survival of that species.

A NDF is defined in the CITES Regulations to mean a finding by the Scientific Authority advising that a proposed export of an Appendix I (or II) specimen will not be detrimental to the survival of the species and that a proposed import of an Appendix I specimen is not for purposes that would be detrimental to the survival of the species.

##### NEM: PAA

NEM: PAA provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biodiversity and natural landscapes and seascapes in protected areas. Protected areas in South Africa offer a viable tool for habitat protection and the protection and maintenance of ecologically viable numbers of the Cape mountain zebra and their associated species and habitats.

#### 2.6.3 Other relevant South African legislation

Apart from the National Environmental Management Act, 107 of 1998 (NEMA) and its related Acts and Regulations, the nine provincial conservation ordinances / acts are the major regulatory instruments for the regulation of wild animal species in South Africa.



**SCHEDULE**

Transvaal Nature Conservation Ordinance, 12 of 1983 (implemented in Gauteng; Limpopo including Gazankulu and Venda; North West including Bophuthatswana and Lebowa and Mpumalanga Provinces) and augmented by:

- Gauteng Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983 - Gauteng Nature Conservation Act, 2014;
- Limpopo Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983 - Limpopo Environmental Management Act, 2003; Gazankulu Nature Conservation Act, 5 of 1975, Venda Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1973;
- Mpumalanga Ordinance, 1983 - Mpumalanga Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1998;
- North West Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1983; Bophuthatswana Nature Conservation Act, 1973; Lebowa Nature Conservation Act, 1973, and tribal rule.

Cape Province Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974 (implemented in the Western Cape; Eastern Cape including Ciskei and Transkei; Northern Cape and North West Provinces) and augmented by:

- Western Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974 - Western Cape Biodiversity Bill *in prep.*
- Northern Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974 - Northern Cape Nature Conservation Act, 9 of 2009
- Eastern Cape Nature Conservation Ordinance, 19 of 1974; Ciskei Nature Conservation Act, 10 of 1987; Transkei Decree 9 of 1992.

Natal Nature Conservation Ordinance, 15 of 1974 (implemented in KwaZulu-Natal Province, including KwaZulu)

- KwaZulu Nature Conservation Act, 29 of 1992 - KwaZulu-Natal Nature Conservation Management Act, 9 of 1997; KwaZulu Nature Conservation Act, 8 of 1975

Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 1969 (implemented in the Free State Province, including QwaQwa) and augmented by:

- Free State Nature Conservation Ordinance, 8 of 1969; QwaQwa Nature Conservation, 5 of 1976.

Supporting decision making instruments include National Norms and Standards and Provincial Conservation and Regulatory Policies.

Other Acts such as the Animals Protection Act, 71 of 1962 as amended, which regulates animal welfare in South Africa is also applicable to wildlife.

The Game Theft Act, 105 of 1991, the Fencing Act, 31 of 1963; the Animal Health Act, 7 of 2002, Animals Diseases Act, 35 of 1984, Medicines and Related Substances Control Act, 101 of 1965, and the Animal Matters Amendment Act, 42 of 1993, may also be relevant to Cape mountain zebra conservation as it plays a significant role in veterinary care of animals, as well as their translocation.

Furthermore, Cape mountain zebra is a carrier of AHS. As a result, certain restrictions (Animal Diseases Act) are in place for the movement of Cape mountain zebra, especially into the AHS controlled areas of the Western Cape (set out by the Department of Agriculture in 2003).



## SCHEDULE

## 3) PLANNING FRAMEWORK

## 3.1 The planning context

The Cape mountain zebra BMP-S workshop planning process was aligned to the framework provided by the IUCN Species Survival Commission for species conservation planning. Refer to Figure 4. It has guided the stakeholder engagement and planning workshops in defining the desired state, objectives and actions for this BMP-S. The outputs have guided the compilation of the Action Plan and Monitoring Framework (Section 5) to enable effective monitoring and reporting, based on appropriate indicators of success (measurable indicators/outputs) for each action. This enables the tracking of progress towards achieving objectives and thus allow for the adaptive review of objectives (IUCN 2008).

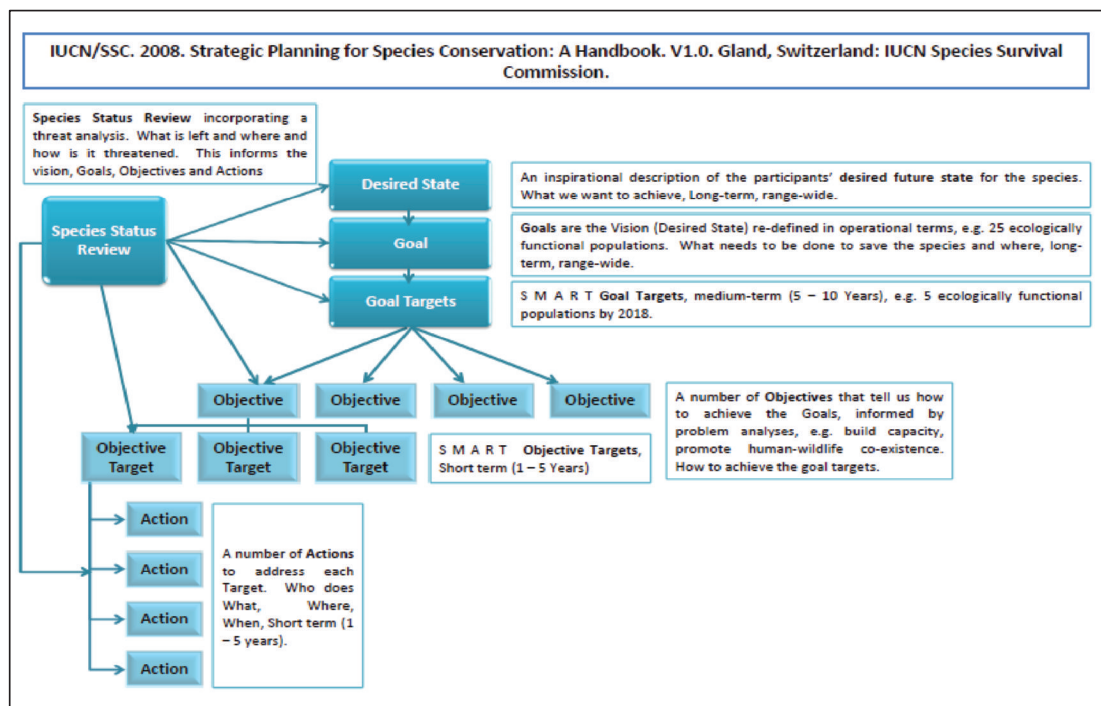


Figure 4: IUCN Species Survival Commission (SSC) schematic for species conservation planning.

## 3.2 Key role players

Key role players and stakeholders in the management of the Cape mountain zebra are the following (Table 5).

- Those government departments and agencies (at a national, provincial and local level) that have been mandated in terms of legislation, to protect this species, and to implement the actions identified in this plan in order to ensure the long term survival of this species in the wild.
- Other government departments involved in regulating activities that may impact on achieving the conservation objective for the species.
- Private land owners, (including wildlife ranchers), with sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra on their land;
- Researchers and research institutions involved with research relevant to the species.
- Non-governmental organisations, at both a national and international level providing funding for management implementation, research, students and projects.

## SCHEDULE

**Table 5.** Organisations that are involved in developing and implementing various aspects of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.

National Government	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries</li> <li>• Department of Environmental Affairs Branch: Biodiversity and Conservation (DEA: BC)</li> <li>• Department of Environmental Affairs: ToPS and CITES</li> <li>• South African National Biodiversity Institute</li> <li>• South African National Parks</li> <li>• National Zoological Gardens of South Africa</li> </ul>
Provincial Government	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CapeNature</li> <li>• Northern Cape Province: Department of Environment and Nature Conservation</li> <li>• Eastern Cape Province: Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism</li> <li>• Free State Province: Department of Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs</li> <li>• Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency</li> </ul>
Higher Education Institutions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Centre for African Conservation Ecology, Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University</li> <li>• Manchester University</li> <li>• University of the Free State</li> </ul>
Non-Government	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• World Wild Fund for Nature – South Africa (WWF-SA)</li> <li>• Table Mountain Fund (TMF)</li> <li>• Wilderness Foundation</li> <li>• Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT)</li> <li>• Wildlife Ranching South Africa (WRSA)</li> <li>• Professional Hunters Association of South Africa (PHASA)</li> <li>• South African Hunters and Game Conservation Association (SAHGCA)</li> </ul>
Other	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Perdeberg Winery</li> </ul>

**3.3 Stakeholder engagement**

Identified interested and affected parties were invited to participate in the initial Cape mountain zebra BMP-S workshop via e-mail in October 2013. The list of participants and provisional agenda for the workshop is attached as Appendix A and includes experts on Cape mountain zebra, representatives of conservation management agencies, representatives of wildlife ranching and hunting associations, private land owners and researchers (many already participated in a SANBI facilitated workshop for the compilation of the CITES NDF). Invitees were requested to participate in the workshop to facilitate the drafting of a Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape mountain zebra and were requested to recommend additional stakeholders who they thought could contribute to the proposed workshop.

The Stakeholder Workshop was held on 29 November 2013. The workshop included presentations on the current state of knowledge for Cape mountain zebra. The group as a collective developed the Desired State and identified the key threats to the long term survival of Cape mountain zebra in nature. Break-away groups led by an expert in that particular field, then facilitated the compilation objectives and action plans for each threat. The proceedings of the workshop were used to compile the draft Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape mountain zebra. This draft was compiled by representatives of SANParks and CapeNature. CapeNature



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

### SCHEDULE

engaged in two internal workshops to facilitate the adoption of a CapeNature Cape mountain zebra metapopulation management strategy based on the outcomes of the BMP-S workshop and to contribute to developing mechanisms to enable the achievement of the objectives of the BMP-S.

The draft Cape mountain zebra Biodiversity Management Plan will be submitted to the Department of Environmental Affairs for gazetting for public participation. Stakeholders involved in the initial workshop will be provided with the draft Cape mountain zebra BMP-S and encouraged to provide further inputs via the public participation process to promote transparency.

#### 3.4 Relevant agreements

There is currently no formal inter-agency agreement as far the management of Cape mountain zebra is concerned. Apart from the three stakeholder and internal workshops held, a meeting held between the Eastern Cape Parks and Tourism Agency, SANParks and CapeNature in January 2016 in Stellenbosch will form the basis of future inter-agency cooperative agreements, formal Memoranda of Understanding and/or protocols to be developed.

A draft inter-agency protocol for dealing with the potential threat of hybridisation between Cape mountain zebra and plains zebra, and the translocation of surplus Cape mountain zebra from National Parks is under development (Zimmermann personal communication).

#### 3.5 Identification of lead and implementing agencies

A final BMP-S workshop with conservation agencies and other stakeholders was held on 25 May 2016 (Agenda and Attendance Registers are attached as Appendix D). During this workshop all stakeholders for the BMP-s were identified and confirmed, and the relationships between stakeholders were workshoped by small working groups as an introduction to the rest of the proceedings. The outputs of this (Venn diagrams representing different stakeholders and their respective relationships) are attached as Appendix E. This exercise informed further discussion and final agreement on who the respective lead and responsible agencies are, as well as the collaborators.

CapeNature was proposed and accepted as the overall lead agency for the CMZ BMP-S, and the workshop identified additional lead and implementing agencies, and collaborators for the respective actions under each Objective Target. The workshop and all stakeholders present concluded and reached consensus on all identified actions under each objective target.

It should be noted that the NC DENC could not attend the workshop but provided extensive comments on the document. Similarly, the EC DEDEAT and FS DESTEA could not attend either, but have also supplied comments on earlier versions of the BMP-S.

#### 3.6 Expert verification for quality of content and context

The Biodiversity Management Plan for Cape mountain zebra (Draft Cape mountain zebra BMP-S\_V2\_24 April 2016.pdf) was reviewed by Dr Peter Novellie for expert verification of quality of content and context.

Dr Novellie recently retired after 32 years with SANParks, working mainly at the interface between park management planning, wildlife management and national law and policy. His other research interests include the management of ungulate herbivory in protected areas, and the conservation of threatened species. His involvement with Cape mountain zebra started in 1983 when he was appointed to a research position in the Mountain Zebra NP.



**SCHEDULE**

Dr Novellie is generally regarded as the Cape mountain zebra “guru” and has authored and co-authored numerous publications and recommendations on the conservation status, ecology, behaviour, monitoring and management of Cape mountain zebra during his tenure with SANParks.

Dr Novellie found the draft BMP to be thorough and excellently compiled, has endorsed this BMP and provided suggestions which have been incorporated into the content.





#### 4) BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN

Lead agencies:	CapeNature	
Implementing Agencies:	DEA:	Regulation, coordination of implementation, monitoring, evaluation and annual reporting.
	CapeNature:	Regulation, research collaboration, population management, monitoring and reporting.
	SANParks:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	ECPTA:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	EC DEDEAT:	Regulation, monitoring and reporting.
	NC DENC:	Regulation, population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting. [Comments received from NC DENC indicate that they do not currently have the capacity (staff, budget and resources) to implement this BMP-S.]
	FS DESTEA:	Population management, monitoring, research collaboration and reporting.
	NZG:	Research, monitoring and reporting.
	SANBI:	Monitoring, reporting and research facilitation.

#### 4.2.1 THREAT: Population Fragmentation

#### 4.2.2 THREAT: Inbreeding

Breeding of closely-related individuals exacerbates the deleterious genetic consequences of enduring severe and sustained population bottlenecks in Cape mountain zebra, with continued loss of heterozygosity. The establishment of small, single source populations impedes the natural inbreeding avoidance behaviour, naturally exhibited in large viable populations through the dispersal of progeny. This compounded loss of genetic diversity predisposes the sub-populations to decreased resistance of the metapopulation to diseases and adaptation to environmental changes and stochastic events (Penzhorn 1982; Penzhorn 1984; Penzhorn 1985; Skinner and Smithers 1990; Penzhorn and Novellie 1991; Rasa and Lloyd 1994; Frankham *et al.* 2002; Moodley and Harley 2006; Allendorf *et al.* 2012).

#### 4.2.3 THREAT: Hybridisation

Hybridisation between Cape and Hartmann's mountain zebra, due to injudicious translocations result in fertile offspring. Hybridisation between Cape mountain and plains zebra has been confirmed and concerns of introgression have been raised. Introgression is the incorporation of genes from one species or subspecies





### SCHEDULE

to another through hybridisation that results in fertile offspring that further hybridise and backcross to parental populations. Typically, hybridisation occurs when humans introduce exotic species in the range of rare species, or alter habitat so that previously isolated populations are now in secondary contact. Hybridisation with other equid species have also been confirmed and are concerning as this results in displaced reproductive effort of the metapopulation (Gray 1971; Frankham *et al.* 2002; Allendorf *et al.* 2012; Marias 2015; Dalton *et al.* 2016).

#### 4.2.4 THREAT: Habitat alteration and fragmentation

Habitat quality and quantity is negatively impacted by modification, groundwater abstraction, erosion, alien invasive species, inappropriate fire management, overstocking and transformation (Penzhorn and Novellie 1991; Winkler and Owen-Smith 1995; Watson and Chadwick 2007; Hurzuk 2009; Kraaij and Novellie 2010; Smith *et al.* 2011; Watson *et al.* 2011; Schutte-Vlok *et al.* 2012; Strauss 2015; Birss *et al.* 2016;).

#### 4.2.5 THREAT: Insecure habitat

Inability to secure habitat (funding dependant), expand protected areas, fence and provide adequate infrastructure threaten the continued success of the Cape mountain zebra metapopulation (Hurzuk 2009; Schutte-Vlok *et al.* 2012; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Marais 2015; Birss *et al.* 2016).

#### 4.2.6 CHALLENGE: To implement effective metapopulation management

The implementation of an effective metapopulation management strategy in order to ensure the establishment and maintenance of viable populations on suitable habitat within the NDR, maintain allelic diversity, promote and maintain genetic diversity and the reinforcement of reproductive potential, based on sound conservation genetic principles has been recommended by various authors, however, purposeful intervention have not been implemented on a metapopulation level. The increasing establishment of small founder sub-populations, lack of reinforcement and inaction towards understanding and implementing measures to increase genetic diversity of sub-population results in inbreeding, genetic drift, and loss of allelic diversity within sub-populations, and potentially results in decreasing the effective population size (a measure of its genetic behaviour, relative to that of an ideal population) (Hrabar *et al.* 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2013; Hill 2009; Sasidharan *et al.* 2015; Moodley and Harley 2006; Frankham *et al.* 2002; Allendorf *et al.* 2012; Dalton *et al.* 2016; Akçakaya *et al.* 2007; Elmhage and Angerbjörn 2001; Hanski 1999; Olivier *et al.* 2009; Ginsberg *et al.* 1982; Lindenmayer and Burgman 2005; Novellie *et al.* 2002; Moehlman 2002; Watson *et al.* 2005; Watson and Chadwick 2007; Strauss 2015).

#### 4.2.7 CHALLENGE: To provide incentives for private land owners to maintain viable sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra

Hunting, trading and stock accessibility, have been identified as potential Cape mountain zebra derived incentives. Conservation accreditation schemes, metapopulation participation and the provision of conservation management guidelines and support have also been identified as potential incentives, whereas strict policy and legislative requirements have been noted as disincentives. South Africa is very well positioned to accommodate international hunters, however CITES restrictions on trophy exports limits revenue potential and investment. Hunting advocates promote the importance of hunting for conservation in Africa, citing low off-takes, high prices and sustainability as incentives for the conservation of threatened species. Combining economic gain with conservation objectives are challenging for wildlife ranchers and strict conservation policies related to the stocking of Cape mountain zebra limits opportunities for wildlife ranchers to invest in the species, however, wildlife ranching is accredited with conservation successes for a number of species and contributing to landscape level conservation (Van Stittert 2005; Lindsey *et al.* 2007; Cousins *et al.* 2008; Du Toit 2012; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Scientific Authority 2015).



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE****4.2.8 CHALLENGE: To consistently and uniformly implement legislation, policies and IUCN guidelines**

A concurrent legislative jurisdiction is exercised by the appointed agencies or departments of nine provinces, the national DEA and SANParks. Provinces have differing conservation legislations, policies, priorities and objectives and are funded via provincial treasuries aligned with the provincial priorities, resulting in variation in the allocation of capacity and resources for nature conservation. Collectively, the provinces have incorporated approximately 22 sets of nature conservation legislation, including decrees and tribal rules effected in previous homeland states. The concurrent competence issue (environment and nature conservation) between the national and provincial departments creates confusion for the public and potentially obscures specific mandates. The NEM: BA and its subsidiary legislation is implemented by the DEA as well as provinces and incorporates various mandatory obligations in terms of international conventions and agreements. The magnitude of legislation, processes and mandates may appear poorly aligned and inconsistently implemented, resulting in over or under regulation of specific activities towards different objectives, (Goitom 2013; Birss 2014; PMG 2014).

**4.2.9 CHALLENGE: To communicate and collaborate effectively among stakeholders**

The MZWG which was established in 1990, has not been officially active since 2006, but served as an engagement forum for interested and affected parties on aspects of mountain zebra conservation and management. An increase in the number of sub-populations of Cape mountain zebra on private land, an increased interest in utilisation of the species and the increased interest by NGO governing bodies within the wildlife industry in addition to the inactive MZWG, resulted in increased challenges for reconciling the objectives of conservation agencies with the objectives of wildlife ranchers, hunters, animal activists, animal welfare organisations and academia (Novellie *et al.* 2002; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Scientific Authority 2015; Donian 2016 pers. comm.).

**4.2.10 CHALLENGE: To overcome management and capacity constraints**

Conservation management agencies are constrained by limited and decreasing funding for the implementation of conservation action plans, compliance and enforcement. Inadequate or inappropriate equipment, capacity and expertise within the formal conservation agency sector as well as in the private ranching sector encumbers effective management of some sub-populations. The deficiency of site-level management plans and an overall management strategy further disables effective and efficient metapopulation-oriented management of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations (Novellie *et al.* 2002; Lindsey *et al.* 2007; Cousins *et al.* 2008; Hrabar and Kerley 2013; Hrabar and Kerley 2015).

**4.2.11 CHALLENGE: To create awareness**

Cape mountain zebra are not currently perceived to have a conservation value. A major challenge in conservation is influencing people's behaviour. Most conservation issues are complicated and are seen by many people as a luxury, an irrelevance or a threat, despite the many benefits that it provides mankind. Cape mountain zebra has been identified as a flagship species to focus broader conservation marketing campaigns and foster awareness to gain public support, appreciation and a nurturing attitude towards Cape mountain zebra and its habitats (Smith *et al.* 2012; Hrabar and Kerley 2015).

**4.2.12 CHALLENGE: To integrate conservation planning**

The existing network of protected areas, protected area expansion strategies and the establishment of connectivity corridors, do not adequately incorporate Cape mountain zebra metapopulation conservation

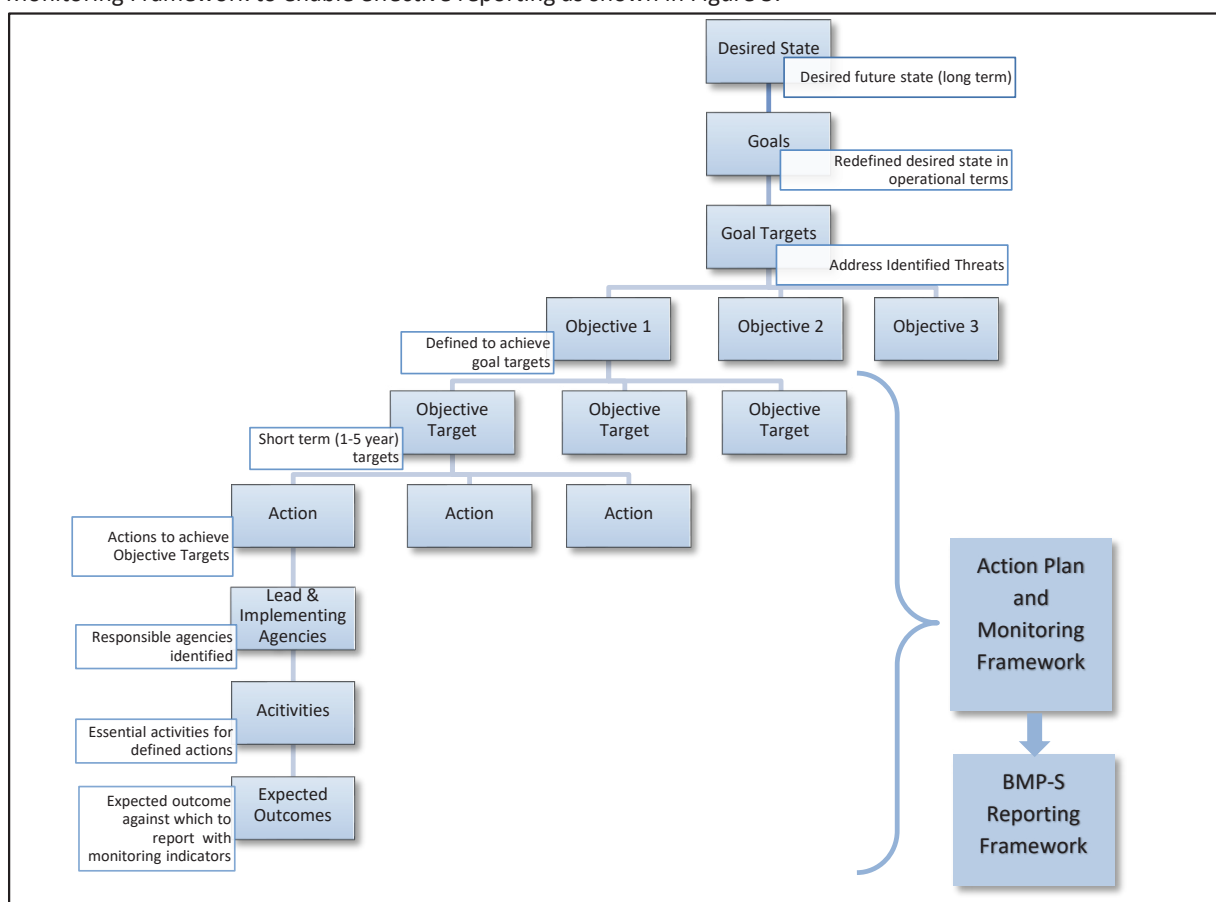


### SCHEDULE

objectives. The long term conservation of Cape mountain zebra requires connectivity of suitable habitat, access to water and optimal forage across landscapes which needs to be incorporated into integrated conservation plans (i.e. identifying spatially explicit priorities and actions for the conservation of Cape mountain zebra) (Penzhorn and Novellie 1991; Winkler and Owen-Smith 1995; Margules and Pressey 2000; Kerley *et al.* 2003; Watson *et al.* 2005; Smith *et al.* 2007; Hurzuk 2009; Ryers *et al.* 2010; Kraaij and Novellie 2010; Watson *et al.* 2011; Smith *et al.* 2011; Hrabar and Kerley 2013; Birss and Schutte-Vlok 2015 pers. comm.; Strauss 2015; Hrabar and Kerley 2015; Lea *et al.* 2016; Birss *et al.* 2016).

### 5) ACTION PLAN AND MONITORING FRAMEWORK

The Cape mountain zebra BMP-S planning process is aligned to the framework provided by the SSC for species conservation planning. It has guided the stakeholder engagement and planning workshops in defining the objectives and actions for this BMP-S. The various workshop outputs have guided the compilation of the Action Plan and Monitoring Framework to enable effective reporting as shown in Figure 5.



**Figure 5:** Action Plan and Monitoring Framework derived from IUCN SSC schematic for species conservation planning methodology applied for this BMP-S.

## SCHEDULE

**5.1 OBJECTIVE 1: MAINTAIN GENETIC DIVERSITY IN THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA META-POPULATION**

To achieve the above objective, the following action plans have been developed for implementation through this BMP-S. These actions will need to be implemented by the identified lead and implementing agencies to mitigate the identified threats (inbreeding; population fragmentation; insecure habitat; and hybridisation) and challenges (implementation of metapopulation management; provision of incentives for private land owners; effective communication and collaboration among stakeholders; consistent and uniform implementation of legislation; management and capacity constraints; and the integration of conservation planning).

**5.1.1 Objective target: Meta-population management**

<b>5.1.1.1 ACTION: ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A CENTRALISED NATIONAL CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA POPULATION DATABASE.</b>		
Lead agencies:	SANBI, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Collate and update Cape mountain zebra distribution, population source, population dynamics, introductions and off-take data annually.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) An up to date Cape mountain zebra distribution and population numbers database.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Effective sub-population reporting.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S.	National centralised database established.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

<b>5.1.1.2 ACTION: DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT A SOUND META-POPULATION MANAGEMENT GUIDELINE.</b>	
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC
Collaborators:	Higher Education Institutions (HEI)
Essential activities:	1) Compile Cape mountain zebra meta-population management guidelines with clear objectives and principles for contributing sub-populations (including criteria for identifying source, sink and reinforcement sub-populations and meta-population management methodology); 2) Evaluate the status of all sub-populations and make recommendations for the management and contribution toward the objectives of the Cape mountain zebra meta-population.
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Improved genetic diversity.
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Number of meta-population strategy participants.

**SCHEDULE**

Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S; Meta-population guideline implemented within 3 years of gazettement BMP-S.	Meta-population management guideline developed and implemented
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.1.1.3 ACTION: DEVELOP A LIST OF PRIORITY SITES FOR REINFORCEMENT AND RE-INTRODUCTION**

Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC
Collaborators:	EWT; WRSA
Essential activities:	1) Develop assessment guidelines for potential reinforcement and reintroduction sites; 2) Develop prioritisation guideline for potential Cape mountain zebra reinforcement and reintroduction sites; 3) Conduct site assessments and develop prioritised list of sites.
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) List of priority sites for reinforcement and reintroduction; 2) Cape mountain zebra re-introduction and re-enforcement site assessment guidelines.
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Increased distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations in the NDR towards conservation targets.

Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S; Implementation within 2 years of gazettement BMP-S.	Priority sites identified, site assessment, prioritisation and conservation translocation guidelines developed and implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.1.1.4 ACTION: ESTABLISH AND REINFORCE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA SUB-POPULATIONS ON PRIORITISED SITES.**

Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA
Collaborators:	EWT
Essential activities:	1) Develop and implement guidelines for the conservation translocations, establishment and monitoring of mixed source Cape mountain zebra sub-populations (informed by expert genetic management recommendations). 2) Translocate surplus available Cape mountain zebra from source sub-populations to identified priority sites, in accordance with meta-population management guidelines.
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Increased Cape mountain zebra distribution and sub-population performance.
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Increased establishment and reinforcement of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.

Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Funds to be raised.	Within 2 years of gazettement BMP-S.	Cape mountain zebra sub-populations re-enforced and established; increased number of Cape mountain zebra in the NDR; increased average sub-populations size.
Challenges:		

## SCHEDULE

**5.1.2 Objective target: Conserve a genetically diverse meta-population**

<b>5.1.2.1 ACTION: INVESTIGATE THE GENETIC DIVERSITY OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA META-POPULATION.</b>		
Lead agencies:	NZG, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Collect samples and analyse data from maximum number of sub-populations;</li> <li>2) Research, develop and implement a cost-effective genetic sampling protocol, investigate non-invasive sampling techniques, prioritise sub-populations to be sampled and recommend minimum sample size per sub-population;</li> <li>3) Research and develop suitable genetic markers using modern technologies to conduct analyses of genetic diversity within sub-populations and consequences of implemented and proposed management actions.</li> </ol>	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Baseline of genetic diversity within sub-populations.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Increased sampling efficiency and efficacy;</li> <li>2) Reduced risks associated with invasive sampling techniques;</li> <li>3) Reliable, repeatable genetic test results achieved;</li> <li>4) Decreased risk of loss of allelic diversity;</li> <li>5) Improved sub-population performance.</li> </ol>	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S; Consolidated baseline information within 5 years of gazettement BMP-S.	Standardised Protocols for genetic sampling; Standardised genetic diversity markers developed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

<b>5.1.2.2 ACTION: MONITOR AND MANAGE THE IMPACTS OF META-POPULATION TRANSLOCATIONS ON GENETIC DIVERSITY.</b>		
Lead agencies:	NZG, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	DEA: ToPS; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Research and develop appropriate monitoring framework to detect and predict potential impacts on the genetic diversity resulting from translocations, reinforcements and mixing or original source populations;</li> <li>2) Develop genetic management recommendations for reintroduced, reinforced and mixed sub-populations;</li> <li>3) Implement and monitor the effects of implementing genetic management recommendations for reintroduced, reinforced and mixed sub-populations.</li> </ol>	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Sound meta-population management and translocations for improved sub-population performance.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Decreased risk of loss of allelic diversity;</li> <li>2) Improved sub-population performance.</li> </ol>	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S; Consolidated assessment after 5 years of gazettement BMP-S.	Monitoring framework, scientific genetic management and monitoring recommendations developed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		



## SCHEDULE

5.1.2.3 ACTION: QUANTIFY THE EXTENT OF HYBRIDISATION OF CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA WITH PZ, HMZ AND OTHER EQUIDS.		
Lead agencies:	NZG, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	SANBI (on database development)	
Essential activities:	1) Collate and centralise distribution data for Cape mountain zebra, PZ and HMZ and known hybrids (Cape mountain zebra with PZ, other equids); 2) Research and develop standardised genetic markers to detect hybrids and genetic profiling for the assessment of genetic integrity; 3) Develop and maintain a centralised database of genetic sequences associated with sub-population distribution.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Quantified and effectively managed hybridisation risks.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Decrease in instances of hybridisation; 2) Eliminate translocation of hybrids.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S; Genetic markers and profiling after 3 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Spatial dataset for distribution of Cape mountain zebra, PZ, and HMZ developed; standardised hybridisation detection and genetic profiling developed; genetic sequences database established.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

5.1.2.4 ACTION: CONDUCT RESEARCH TO QUANTIFY THE EXTENT AND SEVERITY OF POSSIBLE DISEASE OCCURRENCE IN CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA.		
Lead agencies:	NZG, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Research and develop the screening of innate immunity genes in Cape mountain zebra to identify disease associated mutations as well as determine diversity of these genes; 2) Research and develop a genetic test for the screening of babesiosis in Cape mountain zebra; 3) Research and develop a genetic test to detect the prevalence and or presence of equine sarcoids in Cape mountain zebra.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Effective disease detection and quantified disease susceptibility of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Known prevalence and distribution of disease; 2) Effective management of disease risk.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 2 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Standardised genetic tests for disease susceptibility and detection developed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

## SCHEDULE

5.1.2.5 ACTION: ASSESS THE REPRODUCTIVE FITNESS OF CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA SUB-POPULATIONS.		
Lead agencies:	NZG, CN, SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEa; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Opportunistic research and develop reproductive fitness assessment of Cape mountain zebra: conduct fundamental and applied research to further knowledge and understanding of Cape mountain zebra reproduction and integrate results into management recommendations.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Sound meta-population management for improved reproductive fitness and sub-population performance.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Sub-populations' reproductive performance assessed.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Opportunistic (as animals become available).	Reproductive fitness assessment report for sampled sub-populations (opportunistic during translocations).
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints. Access to animals and high cost and risk of moving animals, so optimise opportunity.		

## 5.1.3 Objective target: Safeguard Cape mountain zebra against hybridisation

5.1.3.1 ACTION: MANAGE THE RISK OF HYBRIDISATION OF CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA WITH PZ, HMZ AND OTHER EQUIDS.		
Lead agencies:	SANParks, CN	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEa; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Assess, quantify and prioritise Cape mountain zebra sub-populations at risk of hybridisation; 2) Develop a hybrid detection guideline based on phenotypic identification and traits.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Reduced risk of hybridisation for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Decrease in hybridisation risk.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S.	Cape mountain zebra sub-populations at risk of hybridisation assessed; hybridisation detection guideline developed (phenotypic assessment).
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

## 5.1.4 Objective target: Known impact of disease in Cape mountain zebra

5.1.4.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT A SARCOID SURVEILLANCE PROTOCOL LINKED TO THE NATIONAL CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA POPULATION MONITORING DATABASE.		
Lead agencies:	SANParks	
Implementing agencies:	CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEa; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	NZG; DAFF: State Veterinarian; DEA: ToPS	
Essential activities:	1) Develop and maintain a reporting protocol for sarcoidosis in Cape mountain zebra sub-populations;	

**SCHEDULE**

	2) Develop and implement Cape mountain zebra sarcoidosis post mortem protocol for collection and banking of relevant material with the NZG Biobank.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Known prevalence and distribution of disease, associated with understanding of genetic diversity of sub-populations.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Known prevalence and distribution of disease; 2) Disease risk mitigation.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S.	Disease surveillance and post mortem protocols developed; Disease prevalence reported.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.1.4.2. ACTION: PROMOTE AND FACILITATE RESEARCH ON CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA PARASITE LOAD AND HOST-PATHOGEN INTERACTIONS.**

Lead agencies:	NZG	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Research aetiological agents of disease to further knowledge and understanding of epidemiology.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Parasite prevalence data.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Known parasite load and distribution.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S.	Parasite Load Assessments for sampled sub-populations (Opportunistic during translocations)
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.2 OBJECTIVE 2: UNDERTAKE MONITORING AND RESEARCH TO INFORM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT**

To achieve the above objective, the following action plans have been developed for implementation through this BMP-S. These actions will need to be implemented by the identified lead and implementing agencies to mitigate the identified threats (inbreeding; habitat fragmentation and alteration; and hybridisation) and challenges (implementation of metapopulation management; effective communication and collaboration among stakeholders; management and capacity constraints; and the integration of conservation planning).

**5.2.1 Objective target: Long term monitoring of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations****5.2.1.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT STANDARDISED CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA SURVEY AND MONITORING PROTOCOLS FOR PROTECTED AREAS TO INFORM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT.**

Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEA; NC DENC
Collaborators:	SANBI
Essential activities:	1) Develop standardised data collection and population monitoring protocols for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations on protected areas (incorporating the guidelines compiled by the MZWG);



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE**

	2) Develop standardised population monitoring protocols for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations on private land (incorporating the guidelines compiled by the MZWG);	
	3) Conduct regular standardised sub-population assessments according to guidelines (precision based, game census).	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Quality population monitoring data to inform assessments of sub-population performance and determination of off-take quotas.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Improved and consistent population trend monitoring and reporting.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funds to be raised for total census.	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S; Total census conducted at least once per sub-population in 5 years.	Precision based total census of protected areas with Cape mountain zebra; Standardised data collection and population monitoring protocols developed and implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.2.1.2 ACTION: IMPLEMENT RESEARCH ON HABITAT MANAGEMENT (INCLUDING IMPROVEMENT AND REHABILITATION) FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA.**

Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	Manchester University, EWT	
Essential activities:	1) Facilitate research to inform appropriate Cape mountain zebra habitat management, (incorporate fire, alien vegetation, predation and game stocking where applicable). 2) Implement best-practice and research findings for integrated fire-alien vegetation-game stocking-predation for Cape mountain zebra habitat management.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Applied research informing management actions for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Research publications, draft publications and reports.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Research funding to be sourced.	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S.	Applied research on habitat management conducted, informs adaptive management of Cape mountain zebra sub-population sites.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.2.1.3 ACTION: SUBMIT ANNUAL CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA SUB-POPULATION STATUS REPORTS.**

Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	SANBI	
Essential activities:	1) Develop and implement standardised annual reporting formats for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations; 2) Collate sub-population status reports and analyse overall meta-population performance.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Quality population data to inform conservation assessments.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Improved meta-population performance. 2) Improved knowledge and understanding of meta-population performance.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S; Annually.	Standardised reporting formats developed and implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

5.2.1.4 ACTION: ASSESS POPULATION PERFORMANCE AND HABITAT CONDITION FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA ON PRIVATE LAND.		
Lead agencies:	CN, EC DEDEAT	
Implementing agencies:	CN; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	SANBI; SANParks; ECPTA; HEI; EWT	
Essential activities:	1) Regulatory agencies to develop and implement standardised habitat and population assessments for Cape mountain zebra on private land (incorporating the guidelines compiled by the MZWG); 2) Conduct assessment of habitat quality, habitat area availability, intra-specific competition and water availability for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations on private land.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Quality population and habitat conditions data to inform conservation assessments.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Improved meta-population performance; 2) Maintenance of ecological processes.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Within 2 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Standardised habitat and population assessments for Cape mountain zebra on private land developed and implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

### 5.3 OBJECTIVE 3: CONSISTENTLY AND UNIFORMLY IMPLEMENT LEGISLATION, REGULATIONS, POLICIES AND GUIDELINES

To achieve the above objective, the following action plans have been developed for implementation through this BMP-S. These actions will need to be implemented by the identified lead and implementing agencies to mitigate the identified threats (insecure habitat; and hybridisation) and challenges (provision of incentives for private land owners; effective communication and collaboration among stakeholders; consistent and uniform implementation of legislation; and management and capacity constraints).

#### 5.3.1 Objective target: Consistent and uniform development and implementation of legislation and policy.

5.3.1.1 ACTION: DEVELOP NATIONAL TRANSLOCATION GUIDELINES	
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, DEA: ToPS
Implementing agencies:	DEA: ToPS; NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC
Collaborators:	EWT
Essential activities:	1) Develop a national guideline to avoid and manage the risks of Cape mountain zebra hybridising with PZ, HMZ and other equids, including mitigation of hybridisation risks to be implemented in the event of escapes from protected areas and stewardship (including custodianship) sites; 2) Develop and implement a national protocol for DNA sampling, testing and reporting on hybridisation; 3) Develop a national translocation guideline (Norms and Standards in terms of section 9, read with section 100, of NEM: BA, which includes a requirement for genetic testing and translocation policy) for Cape mountain zebra, incorporating the risks posed by AHS on translocations.



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE**

<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b> 1) Appropriate regulatory measures developed and gazetted to reduce hybridisation and genetic risks to Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.		
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b> 1) Uniform policy and regulation.		
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S; Norms and Standards after 5 years of gazetting BMP-S.	National guidelines and protocols for avoiding and mitigating the risks of hybridisation developed; National norms and standards for translocation of Cape mountain zebra developed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.3.1.2 ACTION: IMPLEMENT AN ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY FOR SUSTAINABLE OFF-TAKES OF CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA**

<b>Lead agencies:</b> SANBI, CN, SANParks		
<b>Implementing agencies:</b> SANParks; CN; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC		
<b>Collaborators:</b> DEA; ECPTA		
<b>Essential activities:</b> 1) Develop an appropriate adaptive MSE model for determining sustainable Cape mountain zebra hunting quotas; CITES removed so that local and international hunting (removal of the animal) is captured 2) Develop and implement standardised site-level decision support and assessment models for evaluating and advising on the potential site level impacts of off-takes.		
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b> 1) Sustainable off-takes and management of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.		
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b> 1) Trophy hunting exports. 2) Permits issued for translocation or hunting.		
<b>Funding / Resources</b>	<b>Timeframe</b>	<b>Measurable Indicators / Outputs</b>
Agency operational budget	Within 1 year of gazetting BMP-S.	A system for the allocation of CITES hunting quota; Site level off-take assessment model developed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.4 OBJECTIVE 4: EFFECTIVELY COMMUNICATE, COLLABORATE AND COORDINATE BETWEEN STAKEHOLDERS AND THE PUBLIC FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA CONSERVATION**

To achieve the above objective, the following action plans have been developed for implementation through this BMP-S. These actions will need to be implemented by the identified lead and implementing agencies to mitigate the identified threats (inbreeding; habitat and population fragmentation; insecure and altered habitat; and hybridisation) and challenges (implementation of metapopulation management; provision of incentives for private land owners; effective communication and collaboration among stakeholders; consistent and uniform implementation of legislation; management and capacity constraints; integration of conservation planning; and increasing awareness).



## SCHEDULE

**5.4.1 Objective target: Establish and maintain partnerships for Cape mountain zebra conservation.**

<b>5.4.1.1 ACTION: FORMALISE INTER-AGENCY COLLABORATION TO COORDINATE AND REVIEW THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S.</b>		
Lead agencies:	DEA: BC	
Implementing agencies:	CN; SANParks; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:		
Essential activities:	1) Establish a Steering Committee for the implementation and review of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S; 2) Develop Steering Committee terms of reference and reporting framework; 3) Develop and implement an inter-agency capacity development and exchange strategy; 4) Draft an inter-agency MOU for the exchange, and or donation of Cape mountain zebra to attain the objectives of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Effective, collaborative coordination among stakeholders.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Steering Committee Terms of Reference; Inter Agency MOUs.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be raised to enable agency capacity building and knowledge exchange.	Initiate within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S.	Cape mountain zebra BMP-S Steering Committee established; Inter-agency capacity developed; Cape mountain zebra sourced and donated.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

<b>5.4.1.2 ACTION: ENGAGE AND COLLABORATE WITH STAKEHOLDERS TO ACHIEVE THE OBJECTIVES OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S.</b>		
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
Implementing agencies:	DEA; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	Private Sector; WRSA; NZG	
Essential activities:	1) Evaluate the potential for and implement custodianship agreements and fence-permeability agreements for Cape mountain zebra sub-populations exposed to habitat availability pressure; 2) Communicate Cape mountain zebra BMP-S aligned research, implementation progress, research needs and requirements to stakeholders, research partners and research institutions; 3) Compile a Cape mountain zebra driven People and Parks conservation strategy. 4) Investigate and report on National Biodiversity Economy Strategy (BES) ventures appropriate for Cape mountain zebra.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Cape mountain zebra sub-populations secured on good habitat and effectively managed; Knowledge generated and disseminated.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Agreements and MOUs signed; Research and People and Parks projects implemented.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget	Initiate within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S.	Stewardship; Custodianship agreements; Collaborative research projects; People and Parks projects implemented; identified BES ventures implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

## SCHEDULE

5.4.1.3 ACTION: IMPLEMENT HABITAT EXPANSION THROUGH STEWARDSHIP, CUSTODIANSHIP AND CONNECTIVITY CORRIDORS.		
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
Implementing agencies:	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	EWT; WWF; DEA: BC	
Essential activities:	1) Integrate Cape mountain zebra habitat requirements into conservation planning processes and identify priority Cape mountain zebra habitat sites at provincial and national level to inform expansion and custodianship initiatives; 2) Prioritise and implement Cape mountain zebra stewardship and custodianship agreements at priority sites; 3) Purchase suitable land for Cape mountain zebra habitat expansion.	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Cape mountain zebra sub-populations secured on good habitat and effectively managed.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Integrated conservation planning with Cape mountain zebra habitat priorities; 2) Cape mountain zebra habitat expansion and land acquisition.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be raised for land acquisitions.	Initiate within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S.	Integrated conservation planning, prioritised Cape mountain zebra stewardship and land acquisition sites identified.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.4.2 Objective target: Increase private sector investment and support for Cape mountain zebra conservation.**

5.4.2.1 ACTION: DEVELOP INCENTIVES FOR STAKEHOLDERS TO PARTICIPATE IN AND CONTRIBUTE TO ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVES OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S.		
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
Implementing agencies:	DEA: BC; NZG; SANBI; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEA; NC DENC	
Collaborators:	EWT; Private Sector, WRSA; Birdlife; DEA: ToPS	
Essential activities:	1) Investigate and develop appropriate incentives for participation in Cape mountain zebra conservation, in consultation with stakeholders;	
Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:	1) Increased participation in Cape mountain zebra conservation by private land owners.	
Monitoring and Evaluation:	1) Distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations - number of properties and extent of occurrence.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be raised for stakeholder workshops.	Within 1 year of gazettement BMP-S.	Incentives schemes developed for participation in Cape mountain zebra conservation, BES ventures implemented.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

5.4.2.2 ACTION: DEVELOP INCENTIVES FOR THE EFFECTIVE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE META-POPULATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY BY ALL STAKEHOLDERS.	
Lead agencies:	CN, SANParks, ECPTA
Implementing agencies:	DEA: BC; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; NC DENC
Collaborators:	



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE**

<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop and implement Cape mountain zebra meta-population custodianship endorsement scheme.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased participation by Cape mountain zebra custodians.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations - number of properties and extent of occurrence.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be raised for stakeholder workshops.	Within 2 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Cape mountain zebra meta-population custodians endorsed.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.4.2.3 ACTION: DEVELOP INCENTIVES FOR THE EFFECTIVE AVERSION AND MITIGATION OF CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA HYBRIDISATION THREATS.**

<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks, ECPTA	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; NC DENC	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	Private Sector; WRSA	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Investigate, develop and implement incentives for extirpation of HMZ from prioritised areas in the Cape mountain zebra NDR.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased participation in Cape mountain zebra conservation by private land owners and other stakeholders.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations - number of properties and extend of occurrence.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be raised for stakeholder workshops.	Within 3 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Extirpation of HMZ and Cape mountain zebra hybrids in priority Cape mountain zebra areas.
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

**5.4.3 Objective target: Increase public awareness and education on the status and threats facing Cape mountain zebra.****5.4.3.1 ACTION: IMPLEMENT ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATION AND EXTENSION INITIATIVES TO PROMOTE AWARENESS ON THE STATUS AND THREATS FACING CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA.**

<b>Lead agencies:</b>	CN, SANParks	
<b>Implementing agencies:</b>	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; NC DENC	
<b>Collaborators:</b>	NZG; EWT	
<b>Essential activities:</b>	1) Develop resources and tools to facilitate environmental education and extension, focussing on the status and threats facing Cape mountain zebra; 2) Incorporate Cape mountain zebra as a case study in environmental education initiatives, i.e. the Green Matter Gamification Initiative.	
<b>Expected Outcome in 5 yrs.:</b>	1) Increased awareness of stakeholders and public on the importance of Cape mountain zebra as an indicator species.	
<b>Monitoring and Evaluation:</b>	1) Resources and tools developed and number of people targeted.	
Funding / Resources	Timeframe	Measurable Indicators / Outputs
Agency operational budget; Supplementary funding to be	Within 2 years of gazetting BMP-S.	Resources and tools developed for environmental education and extension; environmental education activities conducted.



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

**SCHEDULE**

raised for environmental education activities.		
Challenges: NC DENC has capacity constraints.		

## 6) CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S REPORTING FRAMEWORK

Below is the outline of the reporting framework based on the draft provided by DEA. It indicates the actions and the responsible reporting agencies.

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	IMPLEMENTING AGENCIES / COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
<b>OBJECTIVE 1</b>								
<b>Objective Target 1.1</b>								
MAINTAIN GENETIC DIVERSITY IN THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA META-POPULATION								
Meta-population management								
1.1.1.1 Maintain a centralised national Cape mountain zebra population database.	SANBI, CN, SANParks			NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Spatial Cape mountain zebra distribution databases	National centralised database established		
1.1.1.2 Develop and implement a sound meta-population management guideline.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			CN; SANParks; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; HEI	Meta-population management guideline; Assessment of sub-populations	Meta-population management guideline developed and implemented		
1.1.1.3 Develop a list of priority sites for reinforcement and reintroduction.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; EWT; WRSA	Priority sites identified; Site assessment; Translocation and prioritisation guideline	Priority sites identified; Increased distribution of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations in NDR		
1.1.1.4 Establish and reinforce Cape mountain zebra sub-populations on prioritised sites.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EWT	Translocation of Cape mountain zebra to priority sites	Increased distribution of viable Cape mountain zebra sub-populations		
<b>Objective Target 1.2</b>								
Conserve genetically diverse meta-population								
1.2.1 Investigate the genetic diversity of the Cape mountain zebra meta-population.	NZG, CN, SANParks			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Genetic sampling protocol; Genetic markers developed; Samples collected.	Baseline of genetic diversity in sub-populations		
1.2.2 Monitor and manage the impacts of meta-population translocations on genetic diversity	NZG, CN, SANParks			SANParks; CN; DEA; ToPS; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Genetic monitoring framework and management recommendations	Sound meta-population translocations		
1.2.3 Quantify the extent of hybridisation of Cape	NZG, CN, SANParks			NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT;	Centralised distribution data for Cape mountain zebra, HMZ and PZ;	Managed hybridisation risk		



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	IMPLEMENTING AGENCIES / COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
mountain zebra with PZ, HMZ and other equids.				FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Genetic markers for hybridisation; Genetic sequence database			
1.2.4 Conduct research to quantify the extent and severity of possible disease occurrence in Cape mountain zebra.	NZG, CN, SANParks			NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Innate immunity genes screened; genetic tests for babesiosis and sarcoidosis	Disease risk mitigated		
1.2.5 Assess the reproductive fitness of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations.	NZG, CN, SANParks			NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Reproductive fitness of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations assessed	Improved reproductive fitness in Cape mountain zebra sub-populations		
<b>Objective Target 1.3</b>	Safeguard Cape mountain zebra against hybridisation							
1.3.1 Manage the risk of hybridisation of Cape mountain zebra with PZ, HMZ and other equids.	SANParks, CN			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Hybrid detection and hybrid risk assessment protocols	Decrease in instances of hybridisation		
<b>Objective Target 1.4</b>	Known impact of disease in Cape mountain zebra							
1.4.1 Implement a sarcoid surveillance protocol linked to the national Cape mountain zebra population monitoring database.	SANParks			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; NZG; DAFF; State Veterinarian; DEA; ToPS	Sarcoid surveillance	Disease prevalence and impact documented		
1.4.2 Promote and facilitate research on Cape mountain zebra parasite load and host-pathogen interactions.	NZG			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Parasite load assessments and epidemiology research	Research outputs		
<b>OBJECTIVE 2</b>	IMPLEMENT MONITORING AND RESEARCH TO INFORM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT							
<b>Objective Target 2.1</b>	Long term monitoring of Cape mountain zebra sub-populations							
2.1.1 Implement standardised Cape mountain zebra survey and monitoring protocols for protected	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SN; SANParks; ECPTA; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; SANBI	Precise game censuses; standardised monitoring protocols	Accurate population trend data		



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA



## SCHEDULE

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	IMPLEMENTING AGENCIES / COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
areas to inform adaptive management.								
2.1.2 Implement research on habitat management (including improvement and rehabilitation) for Cape mountain zebra.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			CN; SANParks; ECPTA; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; Manchester University; EWT	Research informing and integrated habitat management for Cape mountain zebra	Research publications; Improved habitat management		
2.1.3 Submit annual Cape mountain zebra sub-population status reports.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; SANBI	Standardised annual reporting and status reports	Quality Cape mountain zebra sub-population data		
2.1.4 Assess population performance and habitat condition for Cape mountain zebra on private land.	CN, EC DEDEAT			CN; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; SANBI; SANParks; ECPTA; HEI; EWT.	Standardised habitat and population assessments for introductions	Viable populations introduced		
<b>OBJECTIVE 3</b>	<b>CONSISTENTLY AND UNIFORMLY DEVELOP AND IMPLEMENT LEGISLATION, REGULATIONS, POLICIES AND GUIDELINES</b>							
<b>Objective Target 3.1</b>	Consistent and uniform implementation of legislation and policy							
3.1.1 Develop national translocation guidelines.	CN, SANParks, DEA; ToPS			DEA; ToPS; NZG; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; EWT	National guidelines for mitigation of hybridisation risk, DNA testing and translocation of Cape mountain zebra	Uniform policy and regulation – managed hybridisation risk		
3.1.2 Implement an adaptive management strategy for sustainable off-takes of Cape mountain zebra.	SANBI, CN, SANParks			SANParks; CN; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; DEA; ECPTA	MSE for sustainable harvesting and Cape mountain zebra quotas	Sustainable hunting quotas		
<b>OBJECTIVE 4</b>	<b>EFFECTIVELY COMMUNICATE, COLLABORATE AND COORDINATE BETWEEN STAKEHOLDERS AND THE PUBLIC FOR CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA CONSERVATION</b>							
<b>Objective Target 4.1</b>	Establish and maintain partnerships for Cape mountain zebra conservation							
4.1.1 Formalise inter-agency collaboration to coordinate and review the implementation of the	DEA; BC			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC	Cape mountain zebra BMP-S Steering Committee; Inter-agency MOU and capacity exchange	Inter-agency collaboration		



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

ACTIONS	RESPONSIBLE AGENCY	TIMELINE	RESOURCES NEEDED	IMPLEMENTING AGENCIES / COLLABORATORS	DELIVERABLES	MEASURABLE OUTCOMES	PROGRESS	CHALLENGES / CORRECTIVE MEASURES
Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.								
4.1.2 Engage and collaborate with stakeholders to achieve the objectives of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			DEA; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; Private Sector; WRSA; NZG	Stewardship; Custodianship agreements; MOUs; Research partnerships	Stakeholder participation in Cape mountain zebra conservation		
4.1.3 Implement habitat expansion through stewardship, custodianship and connectivity corridors	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; EWT; WWF; DEA; BC	Integrated conservation plans informing stewardship and land acquisition	Stewardship agreements and land acquisition for Cape mountain zebra conservation		
<b>Objective Target 4.2</b>								
4.2.1 Develop incentives for stakeholders to participate in and contribute to achieving the objective of the Cape mountain zebra BMP-S.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			DEA; BC; NZG; SANBI; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; FS DESTEAT; NC DENC; EWT; Private Sector; WRSA; Birdlife; DEA; ToPS	Stakeholder consultations and participation in BES ventures	Incentives developed		
4.2.2 Develop incentives for the effective implementation of the meta-population management strategy by all stakeholders.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			DEA; BC; SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; NC DENC	Custodianship endorsements	Cape mountain zebra meta-population custodianships		
4.2.3 Develop incentives for the effective aversion and mitigation of Cape mountain zebra hybridisation threats.	CN, SANParks, ECPTA			SANParks; CN; ECPTA; EC DEDEAT; NC DENC; Private Sector; WRSA	Incentives for HMZ extirpation from Cape mountain zebra NDR	Incentives developed		



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## SCHEDULE

Objective Target 4.3	Increase public awareness and education on the status and threats facing Cape mountain zebra				
4.3.1 Implement environmental education and extension initiatives to promote awareness on the status and threats facing Cape mountain zebra.	CN, SANParks	SANParks; CN; ECPTA; NC DENC; NZG; EWT	Environmental education and awareness incentives	Environmental education and awareness tools; Target groups engaged	



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

68

## 7) REFERENCES

- De Alcântara B.K., Alfieri A.A., Headley S.A., Rodrigues W.B., Otonel R.A.A., Lunardi M. and Alfieri A.F. 2015. Molecular characterization of bovine Deltapapillomavirus (BPV1, 2, and 13) DNA in equine sarcoids. *Pesquisa Veterinária Brasileira* 35(5):431-436. Brazil.
- Allendorf, F.W., Luikart, G.H. and Aitken, S.N. 2012. *Conservation and the Genetics of Populations*. Blackwell Publishing. Hoboken, United States.
- Akçakaya, H.R., Mills, G. and Doncaster, C.P. 2007. The role of metapopulations in conservation. In: *Key Topics in Conservation Biology* (Ed. by D. Macdonald and K. Service), pp. 64–84. Blackwell Publishing, Oxford, UK.
- Barry, T., Schutte-Vlok, A. and Wheeler, A.D. 2016. Gamkaberg World Heritage Site and Nature Reserve Complex: Protected Area Management Plan. Unpublished report, CapeNature, Cape Town.
- Biggs, R., M. Schlüter, D. Biggs, E.L. Bohensky, S. Burnsilver, G. Cundill, V. Dakos, T. Daw, L. Evans, K. Kotschy, A. Leitch, C. Meek, A. Quinlan, C. Raudsepp-Hearne, M. Robards, M.L. Schoon, L. Schultz and P.C. West. 2012. Towards principles for enhancing the resilience of ecosystem services. *Annual Review of Environment and Resources* 37, 421-448.
- Birss, C., Rushworth, I., Peinke, D. and Buijs, D. 2015. Inferred Natural Distribution Ranges of Large Mammals in South Africa. Unpublished GIS coverage.
- Birss, C., Saul, L. and Schutte-Vlok, A. 2016. Draft CapeNature Report: A method for assessing potential re-introduction sites for Cape mountain zebra in the Western Cape Province.
- Birss, C. 2014. Conservation in a Regulatory Framework in: Kotze, A., Lane, E. and Nxomani, C. (eds). *One Health*. Centre for Wildlife Health, National Zoological Garden of South Africa, Pretoria. ISBN: 978-0-620-59504-9.
- Boshoff, A.F. Landman, M. and Kerley, G.I.H. 2015. Filling the gaps on the maps: historical distribution patterns of some larger mammals in part of southern Africa. *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Africa*. University of South Africa Press, Pretoria.
- Convention on Biological Diversity. 2013. <https://www.cbd.int/sp/elements/default.shtml>; <https://www.cbd.int/sp/targets/> and <https://www.cbd.int/doc/strategic-plan/2011-2020/Aichi-Targets-EN.pdf> downloaded on 21 June 2016.
- Chadwick, P. and Watson, L. H. 2007. Management of Cape mountain zebra in the Kammanassie Nature Reserve, South Africa. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 37: 31-39.
- Chaffin, B. C., H. Gosnell, and B. A. Cosens. 2014. A decade of adaptive governance scholarship: synthesis and future directions, *Ecology and Society* 19(3): 56. <http://dx.doi.org/10.5751/ES-06824-190356>.
- Cilliers, P., H. C. Biggs, S. Blignaut, A. G. Choles, J. S. Hofmeyr, G. P. W. Jewitt, and D. J. Roux. 2013. Complexity, modeling, and natural resource management. *Ecology and Society* 18(3): 1. <http://dx.doi.org/10.5751/ES-05382-180301>.
- Cleaver, G. 2004. Environmental impacts of large-scale groundwater abstraction on eco-systems of the Kammanassie Mountain. M. Tech. thesis. University of South Africa. Pretoria.



## SCHEDULE

Cleaver, G., Brown, L.R., Bredenkamp, G.J., Smart, M. and Rautenbach, C.J. de W., 2003. Assessment of environmental impacts of groundwater abstraction from Table Mountain Group (TMS) Aquifers on ecosystems in the Kammanassie Nature Reserve and environs. Water Research Commission Report No. 1115/1/03.

Clinchy, M., Haydon, D.T. and Smith, A.T. (2002) Pattern does not equal process: what does patch occupancy really tell us about metapopulation dynamics? *The American Naturalist*, 159, 351–362

Cousins, J.A., Sadler, J.P. and Evans, J. 2008. Exploring the role of private wildlife ranching as a conservation tool in South Africa: stakeholder perspectives. *Ecology and Society* 13 (2): 43.

Dalton, D.L., Zimmerman, D., Mnisi, C., Taplin, M., Novellie, P., Hrabar, H. and Kotze, A. in press. Hiding in plain sight: evidence of hybridisation between Cape mountain and plains zebra.

Dietz, T., E. Ostrom, and P. C. Stern. 2003. The struggle to govern the commons. *Science* 302:1907-1912. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1126/science.1091015>.

Doremus, H. 2001. Adaptive Management, the Endangered Species Act, and the Institutional Challenges of New Age Environmental Protection, *Washburn Law Journal* 41: 50-89, Available at: <http://scholarship.law.berkeley.edu/facpubs/973>.

Du Toit, J.G. and Van Schalkwyk, O.L. 2012. How to improve wildlife production in South Africa. Unpublished Report. Pretoria.

Elmhagen, B. and Angerbjörn, A. 2001. The applicability of metapopulation theory to large mammals. *Oikos*, 94, 89–100.

Frankham, R., Ballou, J.D. and Briscoe, D.A. 2002. *Introduction to Conservation Genetics*. Cambridge University Press. Cambridge. United Kingdom.

Friedman, Y. and Daly, B. 2004. *Red Data Book of the Mammals of South Africa: A Conservation Assessment*. CBSG Southern Africa, Conservation Breeding Specialist Group (SSC/IUCN), Endangered Wildlife Trust. South Africa

Ginzberg, L.R., Slobodkin, L.B., Johnson, K. and Bindman, A.G., 1982. Quasi-extinction probabilities as a measure of impact on population growth. *Risk Anal.* 2: 171–181.

Goitom, H. 2013. *Wildlife Trafficking and Poaching: South Africa*. The Law Library of Congress. <https://www.loc.gov/law/help/wildlife-poaching/southafrica.php> Accessed on 17 February 2016.

Gray, A.P. 1971. *Mammalian Hybrids – A Checklist with Bibliography*. Commonwealth Agricultural Bureaux. Farnham Royal, Slough SL2 3BN. England.

Green, O.O. and Garmestani, A.S. 2011, Adaptive Management to Protect Biodiversity: Best Available Science and the Endangered Species Act, *Diversity* 4, 164-178; doi:10.3390/d4020164.

Groves, C.P. and Bell, C.H. 2004. New investigations on the taxonomy of the zebras genus *Equus*, subgenus *Hippotigris*. *Mammalian Biology*, 69: 182 - 196.

Hanski, I. 1999. *Metapopulation Ecology*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, UK.

Hill, A.H. 2009. Is isolation the major genetic concern for endangered equids? *Animal Conservation* 12: 518 – 519. The Zoological Society of London.

## SCHEDULE

Hrabar, H. and Kerley, G.I.H. 2013. Conservation goals for the Cape mountain zebra *Equus zebra zebra* – security in numbers? *Fauna and Flora International. Oryx* 47 (3): 403 – 409.

Hrabar, H. and Kerley, G.I.H. 2015. Cape mountain zebra 2014/15 Status Report. Port Elizabeth: Centre for African Conservation Ecology, Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University Report 63.

Hrabar, H. Birss, C. Peinke, D. King, S. Novellie, P. Kerley, G. and Child, M. 2015. A Conservation Assessment of *Equus zebra ssp. zebra*. In: M.F. Child, E. Do Linh San, D. Raimondo, H. Davies-Mostert and L. Roxburgh (ED), *The Red List of Mammals of South Africa, Swaziland and Lesotho*. South African National Biodiversity Institute and Endangered Wildlife Trust, South Africa.

Hurzuk, A.H. 2009. The DHNRC Cape mountain zebra Management Plan First Draft. Cape Peninsula University of Technology. Unpublished.

IUCN/SSC. 2008. Strategic Planning for Species Conservation: A Handbook. Version 1.0. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN Species Survival Commission. 104pp.

IUCN/SSC (2013). Guidelines for Reintroductions and Other Conservation Translocations. Version 1.0. Gland, Switzerland: IUCN Species Survival Commission, viii + 57 pp. ISBN: 978-2-8317-1609-1

Kerley, G.I.H., Pressey, R.L., Cowling, R.M., Boshoff, A.F. and Sims-Castley, R. 2003. Options for the conservation of large and medium-sized mammals in the Cape Floristic Region hotspot, South Africa. *Biological Conservation* 112: 169 - 190.

Kotze, A. and Nxomani, C. 2011. The National Zoological Gardens of South Africa: a National Research Facility. *International Zoo Yearbook*. (2011) 45: 30 – 37.

Kraaij, T. and Novellie, P.A. 2010. Habitat selection by large herbivores in relation to fire at the Bontebok National Park (1974-2009): the effects of management changes. *African Journal of Range and Forage Science* 27(1): 21-27.

Lea, J.M.D., Kerley, G.I.H., Hrabar, H., Barry, T.J. and Schultz, S. in press. Conservation of ecological refugees: habitat suitability and population performance across fragmented Cape mountain zebra populations.

Lindenmayer, D. and Burgman, M. 2005. *Practical Conservation Biology*. CSIRO Publishing, Collingwood, Australia. ISBN 0 643 09089 4.

Lloyd, P.H. and Rasa, O.A.E. 1989. Status, reproductive success and fitness in Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*). *Behavioural Ecology and Socio-biology* 25: 411-420.

Lloyd, P. H. 2002. Cape mountain zebra conservation success: an historical perspective. In: B. L. Penzhorn (ed.), *Proceedings of a Symposium on Relocation of Large African Mammals*, pp. 39-41. Onderstepoort, South Africa.

Lindsey, P.A., Roulet, P.A. and Romanach, S.S. 2007. Economic and conservation significance of the trophy hunting industry in sub-Saharan Africa. *Biological Conservation* 134 (2007): 455 – 469.

Margules, C.R. and Pressey, R.L. 2000. Systematic Conservation Planning. *Nature* 405: 243 – 253.

Marais, A. 2015. Cape mountain zebra outside De Hoop Nature Reserve. CapeNature Unpublished Report. Hermanus.

Marais, H.J., Nel, P., Bertschinger, H.J., Schoeman, J.P. and Zimmerman, D. 2007. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Association* 78(3): 145-148.





## SCHEDULE

Myers, N., Mittermeier, R.A., Mittermeier, C.G., da Fonseca, G.A.B. and Kent, J. 2000. Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities. *Nature*. Vol 403. 24 February 2000. Macmillan Magazines Ltd.

Moehlman, P.D. (ed.) 2002. Equids: Zebras, Asses and Horses. Status Survey and Conservation Action Plan. IUCN/SSC Equid Specialist Group.

Moodley, Y. and Harley, E.H. 2005. Population structuring in mountain zebras (*Equus zebra*): the molecular consequences of divergent demographic histories. *Conservation Genetics* 6: 953-968.

Mucina, L. and Rutherford, M.C. (eds.) 2006. The Vegetation of South Africa, Lesotho and Swaziland. Strelitzia 19. South African National Biodiversity Institute, Pretoria.

Nel, P.J., Bertschinger, H., Williams, J. and Thompson, P.N. 2006. Descriptive study of an outbreak of equine sarcoid in a population of Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) in the Gariep Nature Reserve. *Journal of the South African Veterinary Association* 77(4): 184-190.

Novellie, P. 2008. *Equus zebra ssp. zebra*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species 2008: e.T7959A12876612. <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T7959A12876612.en>. Downloaded on 09 February 2016.

Novellie, P., Lindeque, M. Lindeque, P., Lloyd, P. and Koen, J. 2002. Status and Action Plan for the mountain zebra (*Equus zebra*). In: P. D. Moehlman (ed.), Equids: Zebras, Asses and Horses. A Status Survey and Conservation Action Plan, pp. 28-42. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland.

Novellie, P. A., Millar, P. S. and Lloyd, P. H. 1996. The use of VORTEX simulations models in a long-term programme of re-introduction of an endangered large mammal, the Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*). *Acta Oecologica* 17: 657-671.

NRF. 2008. NRF Vision 2015: Strategic Plan of the National Research Foundation. Accessed on 15 February 2015. <http://www.nrf.ac.za/sites/default/files/documents/NRF%20Vision%202015.pdf>

Olsson, P., C. Folke, V. Galaz, T. Hahn, and L. Schultz. 2007. Enhancing the fit through adaptive co-management: creating and maintaining bridging functions for matching scales in the Kristianstads Vattenrike Biosphere Reserve Sweden. *Ecology and Society* 12(1): 28. [online] URL: <http://www.ecologyandsociety.org/vol12/iss1/art28/>.

Olivier, P.I., Van Aarde, R.J. and Ferreira, S.M. 2009. Support for a metapopulation structure among mammals. *Mammal Review* 39: 178-192.

Parliamentary Monitoring Group (PMG). 2014. Minutes - Provincial conservation: support, resources, challenges and constraints in implementing conservation mandate: Department of Environmental Affairs briefing. <https://pmg.org.za/committee-meeting/17878/> Accessed on 17 February 2016.

Penzhorn, B. In press. *Equus zebra*. In: J. S. Kingdon and M. Hoffmann (eds.). The Mammals of Africa, Academic Press, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.

Penzhorn, B.L. and Novellie, P.A. 1991. Some behavioural traits of Cape mountain zebras (*Equus zebra zebra*) and their implications for the management of a small conservation area. *Applied Animal Behavioural Science* 29: 293-299.

Penzhorn, B.L. 1988. *Equus zebra*. In: Mammalian Species. The American Society of Mammalogists. No. 314, pp. 1-7.

Penzhorn, B.L. 1984. A long-term study of social organisation and behaviour of Cape mountain zebras. *Zeitschrift für Tierpsychologie* 64: 97-146.



## SCHEDULE

Pietersen, J. 2005. Population viability of Cape mountain zebra in the Gamka Mountain Nature Reserve, South Africa: the influence of habitat and fire. *Biological Conservation* 122 (2005): 173 – 180.

Rasa, O.A.E. and Lloyd, P.H. 1994. Incest Avoidance and Attainment of Dominance by Females in Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*). *Behaviour* 128 (3 – 4).

Ryers, B., Roux, D., Cowling, R.M., Ginsburg, A.E., Nel, J.L. and O'Farrell, P. 2010. Conservation Planning as a Transdisciplinary Process. *Conservation Biology* 24 (4): 957 – 965.

South African Constitution. 1996. Schedule 4.

<http://www.info.gov.za/documents/constitution/1996/96conssec4.htm>

SABSTC2370.48\_SABS0331\_3. SABS 0331. 1999. Code of Practice for the Translocation of certain species of wild herbivores. South African Bureau of Standards.

Sasidharan, S.P. 2004. Comparative genetics of selected Southern African mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra* and *Equus zebra hartmannae*) populations. Unpublished MSc Thesis. Department of Production Animal Studies, Faculty Veterinary Science, University of Pretoria. 115pp.

Sasidharan, S.P., Ludwig, A., Harper, C., Moodley, Y., Bertshinger, H.J. and Guthrie, A.J. 2011. Comparative genetics of sarcoid tumour-affected and non-affected mountain zebra (*Equus zebra*) populations. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 41(1): 36 – 49.

Schulze, E. 2016. Free State Department of Economic, Small business development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs Report: Cape mountain zebra population data – Gariep Nature Reserve. Unpublished.

Schutte-Vlok, A., Wheeler, A. and Cleaver-Christie, G. 2012. Kammanassie Nature Reserve Management Plan 2013 – 2018. CapeNature.

Scientific Authority of South Africa. 2015. Non-detriment finding for *Equus zebra zebra* (Cape mountain zebra). Reference Number: Equ\_zeb\_zeb\_May2015. Date: 20 May 2015. Issued by the Scientific Authority of South Africa.

Skead, C.J. 2007. Historical Incidence of the Larger Land Mammals in the broader Eastern Cape, Second Edition (eds. Boshoff, A.F., Kerley, G.I.H. and Lloyd, P.H.). Port Elizabeth: Centre for African Conservation Ecology, Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University. ISBN 1-920176-08-X

Skead, C.J. 2011. Historical Incidence of the Larger Land Mammals in the broader Western and Northern Cape, Second Edition (eds. Boshoff, A.F., Kerley, G.I.H. and Lloyd, P.H.). Port Elizabeth: Centre for African Conservation Ecology, Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University. ISBN 1-920176-08-X

Skinner, J.D. and Chimimba, C.T. (revisers) 2005. The Mammals of the Southern African Subregion. Third Edition. Cambridge University Press, Cape Town. ISBN 978-0521-84418-5.

Skinner, J.D. and Smithers, R.H.N. 1990. The Mammals of the Southern African Subregion. Pretoria University Press.

Smith, R.J., Verissimo, D. and MacMillan, D.C. 2012. Marketing and Conservation: How to Lose Friends and Influence People. Durrell Institute of Conservation and Ecology, University of Kent, Caterbury, UK.

Smith, R.K., Marais, A., Chadwick, P., Lloyd, P.H. and Hill, R.A. 2007. Monitoring and management of the endangered Cape mountain zebra *Equus zebra zebra* in the Western Cape, South Africa. *African Journal of Ecology* 46: 207-213.



## SCHEDULE

- Smith, R.K., Ryan, E., Morley, E and Hill, R.A. 2011. Resolving management conflicts: could agricultural land provide the answer for an endangered species in a habitat classified as a World Heritage Site. *Environmental Conservation* 38: 325 - 333.
- Strauss, T. 2015. Cape mountain zebra (*Equus zebra zebra*) habitat use and diet in the Bontebok National Park, South Africa. Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, unpublished thesis, 179pp.
- Taylor, A., Lindsey, P., and Davies-Mostert, H. 2016. An assessment of the economic, social and conservation value of the wildlife ranching industry and its potential to support the Green Economy in South Africa. The Endangered Wildlife Trust, Johannesburg.
- Van Stittert, L. 2005. Bringing in the Wild: The Commodification of Wild Animals in the Cape Colony/province c. 1850 – 1950. *The Journal of African History* 46, No 2 (2005): 269 – 291.
- Vlok J. and Coetzee K. 2008. Ecological capacity of the Little Karoo for larger wildlife. Report and maps compiled for Gouritz Initiative. ([www.gouritz.com](http://www.gouritz.com))
- Watson, L.H., Odendaal, H.E. Barry, T.J. and Pietersen, J. 2005. Population viability of Cape mountain zebra in Gamka Mountain Nature Reserve, South Africa: the influence of habitat and fire. *Biological Conservation* 122: 173-180.
- Watson, L.H. and Chadwick, P. 2007. Management of Cape mountain zebra in the Kammanassie Nature Reserve, South Africa. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 37(1): 31-39.
- Watson, L.H., Kraaij, T. and Novellie, P. 2011. Management of rare ungulates in a small park: habitat use of bontebok and Cape mountain zebra in Bontebok National Park assessed by count of dung groups. *South African Journal of Wildlife Research* 41(2): 158-166.
- Winker, H. 2016a. Technical DRAFT Report: Development of a population simulation model for Cape mountain zebra towards formal evaluation of management strategies. Unpublished SANBI report. SANBI/BAM/STATS/2016/MZ/H2.
- Winker, H. 2016b. Technical Report: Time-series analysis of long-term established mountain zebras within protected areas (1985-2015) with implications for IUCN listing. Unpublished SANBI report. SANBI/BAM/STATS/2016/MZ/H1.
- Winker, H. 2016c. Technical Report: Incorporating carrying capacity limits into forward projection of source populations of Cape mountain zebra. Unpublished SANBI report. SANBI/BAM/STATS/2016/MZ/H1S1.
- Winkler, A. and Owen-Smith, N. 1995. Habitat utilisation by Cape mountain zebras in the mountain Zebra National Park, South Africa. *Koedoe*, 38(1): 83 - 93.
- Young, E., Zumpt, F., Boomker, J., Penzhorn, B.L. and Erasmus, B. 1973. Parasites and diseases of Cape mountain zebra, black wildebeest, mountain reedbuck and blesbok in the Mountain Zebra National Park. *Koedoe* 16: 77-81.

## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX A: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S WORKSHOP PARTICIPANTS AND WORKSHOP INVITATION

## Cape mountain zebra BMP-S Stakeholder Workshop, SANParks CRC, Tokai, 27 November 2013

Name	Organisation	Email
Alan Wheeler	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:adwheeler@capenature.co.za">adwheeler@capenature.co.za</a>
Carly Cowell	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org">Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org</a>
Coral Birss	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:cbirss@capenature.co.za">cbirss@capenature.co.za</a>
Danelle Kleinhans	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:dkleinhans@capenature.co.za">dkleinhans@capenature.co.za</a>
Dick Carr	Private	<a href="mailto:dickcarr@hilbert.co.za">dickcarr@hilbert.co.za</a>
Dr David Zimmerman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:david.zimmerman@sanparks.org">david.zimmerman@sanparks.org</a>
Dr Dean		
Peinke	Eastern Cape Parks	<a href="mailto:dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za">dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za</a>
Dr Peter Novellie	SANParks	<a href="mailto:novellie@netactive.co.za">novellie@netactive.co.za</a>
Christine Kraft	NC DENC	<a href="mailto:christine.dtec@gmail.com">christine.dtec@gmail.com</a>
Guy Palmer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:gpalmer@outlook.com">gpalmer@outlook.com</a>
Halszka Hrabar	NMMU	<a href="mailto:halszka@covarr@gmail.com">halszka@covarr@gmail.com</a>
Jaco van Deventer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:jvdeventer@capenature.co.za">jvdeventer@capenature.co.za</a>
Jeanetta Selier	SANBI	<a href="mailto:J.Selier@sanbi.org.za">J.Selier@sanbi.org.za</a>
Justin Buchman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org">Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org</a>
Andre Geldenhuys	Private	<a href="mailto:nicki@ege.co.za">nicki@ege.co.za</a>
Roland January	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Roland.January@sanparks.org">Roland.January@sanparks.org</a>
Trevor Adams	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org">Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org</a>
Bontle Morwe	DEA	<a href="mailto:morweb@detea.fs.gov.za">morweb@detea.fs.gov.za</a>
	Manchester	
Sussane Schultz	University	<a href="mailto:susanne.shultz@manchester.ac.uk">susanne.shultz@manchester.ac.uk</a>
	Manchester	
Jess Lea	University	<a href="mailto:jessica.lea@postgrad.manchester.ac.uk">jessica.lea@postgrad.manchester.ac.uk</a>
Tebogo Mashua	DEA	<a href="mailto:TMashua@environment.gov.za">TMashua@environment.gov.za</a>
Natalie Hayward	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:nhayward@capenature.co.za">nhayward@capenature.co.za</a>
	Chairman Western	
Stephen Mitchell	Cape WRSA	<a href="mailto:smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za">smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za</a>
Gail Cleaver	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:gail@capenature.co.za">gail@capenature.co.za</a>
Fergill Fortiun	Paardeberg Winery	<a href="mailto:fergill@perdeberg.co.za">fergill@perdeberg.co.za</a>
Buntu Mzamo	DEDEAT	<a href="mailto:buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za">buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za</a>
Nicola Van Wilgen	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Nicola.VanWilgen@sanparks.org">Nicola.VanWilgen@sanparks.org</a>

## SCHEDULE



## CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN WORKSHOP

VENUE: CRC HALL

29 November 2013

### Purpose of Workshop:

The aim of this workshop is to produce a draft biodiversity management plan for Cape mountain zebra. The draft BMP-S will then be summarized and presented to the workshop participants for comment. Following this the BMP-S will be submitted for gazetting and on approval will be published.

<b>WELCOME AND INTRODUCTION</b>	08h30-08h45	Carly Cowell
Feedback of NDF	08h45-09h15	Jeanetta Selier
Presentation status of Cape mountain zebra, selection for BMP-S	09h15-09h30	Coral Birss
Overview of BMP-S	09h30-10h00	Coral Birss
<b>TEA</b>	<b>10h00-10h30</b>	
BMP-S Planning Outline	10h30-10h50	Coral Birss
Desired state formulation	10h50-11h50	Carly Cowell
Hierarchy of objectives	11h50-12h45	Carly Cowell
<b>LUNCH</b>	<b>12h45-13H30</b>	
Threat identification	13h30-14h00	Carly Cowell
Action plans outlines	14h00-15h00	Group work
<b>TEA</b>	<b>15h00</b>	
Close and way forward	15h00-15h30	Coral and Carly



**environmental affairs**

Department:  
Environmental Affairs  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

76

## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX B: CONTRIBUTORS TO COMPILING FIRST DRAFT

- CapeNature Technical Working Group and Contributors  
Jonkershoek (25-27 November 2015); Vrolijkheid (21 – 22 January 2016)
  - Kevin Shaw
  - Dr Andrew Turner – Editing
  - Natalie Hayward – Workshop Facilitation
  - Lee Saul
  - Johan Huisamen
  - Dr Annelise Schutte-Vlok
  - Alexis Olds and Dr Antoinette Veldtman – Literature Review and Research Summary
  - Dr Ernst Baard - Editing
  - Gail Cleaver-Christie – Action Plans
  - Jaco van Deventer
  - Deon Hignett – Legislative context
  - Tom Barry
  - Graham Lewis
  - Blanche de Vries
  - Coral Birss
  - Ivan Donian
  
- SANParks Reference Group and Contributors (Scientific Services and Veterinary Wildlife Unit)
  - Carly Cowell
  - Nicola van Wilgen
  - Dr Sam Ferreira
  - Dr Markus Hofmeyr
  - Dr David Zimmerman
  - Dr Angela Gaylard
  
- February 2016: Comments and Contributions to Authors' Draft
 

○ Nicola van Wilgen	-	SANParks
○ Alan Southwood	-	EC DEDEAT
○ Erika Schulze	-	FS DESTEA
○ Christine Kraft	-	NC DENC
○ Marnus Smit	-	NC DENC
○ Dr Ernst Baard	-	CapeNature
○ Gail Cleaver-Christie	-	CapeNature
○ Dr Andrew Turner	-	CapeNature



## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX C: TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS / ADDITIONS / CHANGES

TEMPLATE FOR SUGGESTED EDITS / ADDITIONS / CHANGES TO THE DRAFT	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	
Section:	Page:
Section content:	
Nature of comment:	Edit / Change / Deletion / Addition / Recommendation
Action taken:	
NOTES:	

## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX D:

# AGENDA

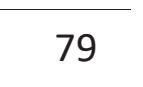
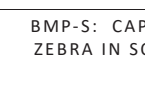
## CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BIODIVERSITY MANAGEMENT PLAN: ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP

**VENUE: Driftsands Nature Reserve  
25 May 2016**

**Purpose of Workshop:**

The aim of this workshop is to facilitate further collaboration between stakeholders to enable agreement between Lead and Implementing Agents for the successful implementation of the Cape mountain zebra BMP.

<b>Tea</b>	8:30 – 9:00	
Welcome & Introduction	9:00 – 9:10	Ernst Baard
Overview of Process & Plan for the Day	9:10 – 9:30	Lauren Waller
Icebreaker: VENN	9:30 – 10:30	All
<b>Tea</b>	10:30 – 10:45	
Session 1: Agreement on Action Plan	10:45 – 12:15	Lauren Waller & All
<b>Lunch</b>	12:15 – 13:00	
Session 2: Agreement on Action Plan	13:00 – 14:30	Lauren Waller & All
Wrap Up	14:30	Lauren Waller
DEA – The Way Forward	14:40	Humbu Mafumo
<b>Close</b>	15:50	Ernst Baard



## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX D: ATTENDANCE REGISTER AND INVITEE LIST FOR THE ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR HTE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S



## Attendance Register

Page 1 / 1

Name of Event	Cape mountain zebra BMP actions and relevant agreements Workshop	Facilitator/s	Lauren Waller
Venue	Boardroom, Driftsands Nature Reserve	Service Provider	
Date(s)	25 May 2016	Time / Duration	

## Participant Details

No.	Name and Surname	Organisation/Institution	Telephone	Email	Signature
1	JACO VAN AARSSEN	CAPE NATURE	0924555564	j.vanarsen@capenature.co.za	
2	Carly Coull	SANParks	0217157510	carly.coull@sanparks.org	
3	Corde Buss	CapeNature	0218268615	cordibuss@capenature.co.za	
4	WILHELM HANSEN	GOEDERHANS	0525239810	W.Hansen@gooderhans.com	
5	WILHELM HANSEN	GOEDERHANS	0525239810	W.Hansen@gooderhans.com	
6	Deshun Pillay	SANBI	0834882275	d.pillay@sanbi.org.za	
7	ANDREW TURNER	CAPE NATURE	0218668000	aturner@capenature.co.za	
8	Kristiaan Dood	CapeNature	0214830009	kristiaan@capenature.co.za	
9	Gareth Morris	CapeNature	079468887	garethm@capenature.co.za	
10	Natalka Hansen	"	0218668000	nhansen@capenature.co.za	
11	Michael Hansen	"	0218668000	m.hansen@capenature.co.za	
12	Pete Smith	NZG	0732598547	pete@nzg.co.za	
13	Lauren Waller	CapeNature	0725923915	lwaller@capenature.co.za	

1



## Attendance Register

Page 1 / 2

Name of Event	Cape mountain zebra BMP actions and relevant agreements Workshop	Facilitator/s	Lauren Waller
Venue	Boardroom, Driftsands Nature Reserve	Service Provider	
Date(s)	25 May 2016	Time / Duration	

## Participant Details

No.	Name and Surname	Organisation/Institution	Telephone	Email	Signature
14	Antoinette Kote	NZG	0834566907	antoinette@nzg.co.za	
15	Sebastian Selzer	SANBI	0334585063	s.selzer@sanbi.org.za	
16	Carl Clever-Christie	Cape Nature	0823772040	gc@capenature.co.za	
17	Craig Geldenhuys	Swartburg Game Breeder	0575772875	craig.geldenhuys@gmail.co.za	
18	Stephen Mitchell	WESA	086765474	smitchell@wesa.org.za	
19	DICK CARR	Pvt: ROUBAKEN CNR	0722484832	dickcarr@hilbert.co.za	
20	Azwinqi Muringi	DEA	0123999608	Azwinqi.muringi@environment.gov.za	
21	OLGA KUMOLO	DEA	0123998518	okumolo@environment.gov.za	
22	Magdel Bojho	DEA	0123999604	mbojho@environment.gov.za	
23	Dean Penke	FCPTA	0824162563	dean.penke@fcpta.co.za	
24	David Zimmermann	SANParks	0836304573	david.zimmermann@sanparks.org	
25	Angelo Gouland	SANParks	0829666176	angelo.gouland@sanparks.org	
26	Monette Engbrecht	CapeNature	0828143559	monette@capenature.co.za	

2



BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

80

## SCHEDULE



## Attendance Register

Page 1 / 1

Name of Event	Cape mountain zebra BMP actions and relevant agreements Workshop	Facilitator/s	Lauren Waller
Venue	Driftsands Nature Reserve	Service Provider	
Date(s)	25 May 2016	Time / Duration	

Participant Details					
No.	Name and Surname	Organisation/Institution	Telephone	Email	Signature
27	Humbie Mnyama	DEA	082 485 6464	humbie@environment.gov.za	
28	Wilma Witsch	DEA	082 657 2522	witsch@environment.gov.za	
29					
30					
31					
32					
33					
34					
35					
36					
37					
38					
39					

3

## SCHEDULE

Cape Mountain Zebra Biodiversity Management Plans Action Lists Workshop				VENN group allocation			
Attendees							
Andrew Turner	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:aaturner@capenature.co.za">aaturner@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes			X	
Angela Gaylard	SANParks	<a href="mailto:angela.gaylard@sanparks.org">angela.gaylard@sanparks.org</a>	Yes			X	
Antoinette Kotze	NZG	<a href="mailto:antoinette@nzg.ac.za">antoinette@nzg.ac.za</a>	Yes	X			
Azwinaki Muingi	DEA	<a href="mailto:AMuingi@environment.gov.za">AMuingi@environment.gov.za</a>	Yes				X
Carly Cowell	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org">Carly.Cowell@sanparks.org</a>	Yes	X			
Coral Birss	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:cbirss@capenature.co.za">cbirss@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes	X			
Craig Geldenhuys	Private	<a href="mailto:craiggeldenhuys01@gmail.com">craiggeldenhuys01@gmail.com</a>	Yes			X	
Dr David Zimmerman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:david.zimmerman@sanparks.org">david.zimmerman@sanparks.org</a>	Yes	X			
Deshni Pillay	SANBI	<a href="mailto:D.Pillay@sanbi.org.za">D.Pillay@sanbi.org.za</a>	Yes			X	
Dick Carr	Private	<a href="mailto:dickcarr@hilbert.co.za">dickcarr@hilbert.co.za</a>	Yes	X			
Dr Dean Peinke	ECPTA	<a href="mailto:dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za">dean.peinke@ecpta.co.za</a>	Yes	X			
Ernst Baard	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:ebaard@capenature.co.za">ebaard@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes		X		
Gail Cleaver-Christie	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:gail@capenature.co.za">gail@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes			X	
Garth Mortimer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:gmortimer@capenature.co.za">gmortimer@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes				X
Humbu Mafumo	DEA	<a href="mailto:HMafumo@environment.gov.za">HMafumo@environment.gov.za</a>	Yes				X
Jaco van Deventer	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:jvdeventer@capenature.co.za">jvdeventer@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes		X		
Jeanetta Selier	SANBI	<a href="mailto:J.Selier@sanbi.org.za">J.Selier@sanbi.org.za</a>	Yes			X	
Lauren Waller	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:lwaller@capenature.co.za">lwaller@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes				
Magdel Boshoff	DEA	<a href="mailto:MBoshoff@environment.gov.za">MBoshoff@environment.gov.za</a>	Yes		X		
Natalie Hayward	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:nhayward@capenature.co.za">nhayward@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes			X	
Rae Smith	NZG	<a href="mailto:rae@nzg.ac.za">rae@nzg.ac.za</a>	Yes				X
Salomie Havenga	Groot Phesantefontein	<a href="mailto:salome@gphranch.com">salome@gphranch.com</a>	Yes		X		
Stephen Mitchell	Western Cape WRSA	<a href="mailto:smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za">smitchell@nashuaisp.co.za</a>	Yes		X		
Olga Kumalo	DEA	<a href="mailto:OKumalo@environment.gov.za">OKumalo@environment.gov.za</a>	Yes		X		
Wessel Havenga	Groot Phesantefontein	<a href="mailto:wessel@gphranch.com">wessel@gphranch.com</a>	Yes				X
Wilma Lutsch	DEA	<a href="mailto:Wlutsch@environment.gov.za">Wlutsch@environment.gov.za</a>	Yes	X			
Marietjie Engelbrecht	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:mengelbrecht@capenature.co.za">mengelbrecht@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes				X
Michael Hanson	CapeNature	<a href="mailto:mhanson@capenature.co.za">mhanson@capenature.co.za</a>	Yes		X		
<b>Apologies</b>				28	7	7	6
Nicola Van Wilgen	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Nicola.VanWilgen@sanparks.org">Nicola.VanWilgen@sanparks.org</a>					
Michele Pfab	SANBI	<a href="mailto:M.Pfab@sanbi.org.za">M.Pfab@sanbi.org.za</a>					
Frikkie Rossouw	EC DEDEAT	<a href="mailto:Frikkie.Rossouw@dedea.gov.za">Frikkie.Rossouw@dedea.gov.za</a>					
Halszka Hrabar	NMMU	<a href="mailto:halszka@covarr@gmail.com">halszka@covarr@gmail.com</a>					
Fergill Fortiun	Paardeberg Winery	<a href="mailto:fergill@perdeberg.co.za">fergill@perdeberg.co.za</a>					
Andre Geldenhuys	Private	<a href="mailto:nicki@ege.co.za">nicki@ege.co.za</a>					
Dale Cunningham	WRSA	<a href="mailto:dale@huntec.co.za">dale@huntec.co.za</a>					
Ernst du Preez	Groot Phesantefontein						
Cobus Theron	EWT	<a href="mailto:cobust@ewt.org.za">cobust@ewt.org.za</a>					
Christine Kraft	NC DENC	<a href="mailto:christine.dtec@gmail.com">christine.dtec@gmail.com</a>					
Elsabe Swart	NC DENC	<a href="mailto:elsabe.dtec@gmail.com">elsabe.dtec@gmail.com</a>					
David Paulse	NC DENCE	<a href="mailto:David.dtec@gmail.com">David.dtec@gmail.com</a>					
Nacelle Collins	FS DESTEA	<a href="mailto:collinsn@detea.fs.gov.za">collinsn@detea.fs.gov.za</a>					
<b>No response</b>							
Roland January	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Roland.January@sanparks.org">Roland.January@sanparks.org</a>					
Trevor Adams	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org">Trevor.Adams@sanparks.org</a>					
Bontle Morwe	FS DESTEA	<a href="mailto:morweb@detea.fs.gov.za">morweb@detea.fs.gov.za</a>					
Sussane Schultz	Manchester University	<a href="mailto:susanne.shultz@manchester.ac.uk">susanne.shultz@manchester.ac.uk</a>					
Jess Lea	Manchester University	<a href="mailto:jessica.lea@postgrad.manchester.ac.uk">jessica.lea@postgrad.manchester.ac.uk</a>					
Tebogo Mashua	DEA	<a href="mailto:TMashua@environment.gov.za">TMashua@environment.gov.za</a>					
Adri Kitshoff	WRSA	<a href="mailto:ceo@wrsa.co.za">ceo@wrsa.co.za</a>					
Buntu Mzamo	DEDEAT	<a href="mailto:buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za">buntu.mzamo@dedea.gov.za</a>					
Lizanne Nel	SAGHCA	<a href="mailto:lizanne@sahunt.co.za">lizanne@sahunt.co.za</a>					
Justin Buchman	SANParks	<a href="mailto:Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org">Justin.Buchman@sanparks.org</a>					
Alan Southwood	EC DEDEAT	<a href="mailto:Alan.Southwood@dedea.gov.za">Alan.Southwood@dedea.gov.za</a>					
Dr Peter Novellie	SANParks	<a href="mailto:novellie@netactive.co.za">novellie@netactive.co.za</a>					
Alexis Symonds	SANParks	<a href="mailto:alexis.symonds@sanparks.org">alexis.symonds@sanparks.org</a>					

sent representative  
e-mailed, sent representatives  
e-mailed, sent representatives  
written inputs provided  
written inputs provided, Christine Kraft  
telephoned

SANParks represented by C. Cowell, A. Gaylard and D Zimmerman  
SANParks represented by C. Cowell, A. Gaylard and D Zimmerman

In UK

In UK

DEA represented by W. Lutsch, H. Mafumo, A. Muingi, M. Boshoff, O. Kumalo

SANParks represented by C. Cowell, A. Gaylard and D Zimmerman

SANParks represented by C. Cowell, A. Gaylard and D Zimmerman



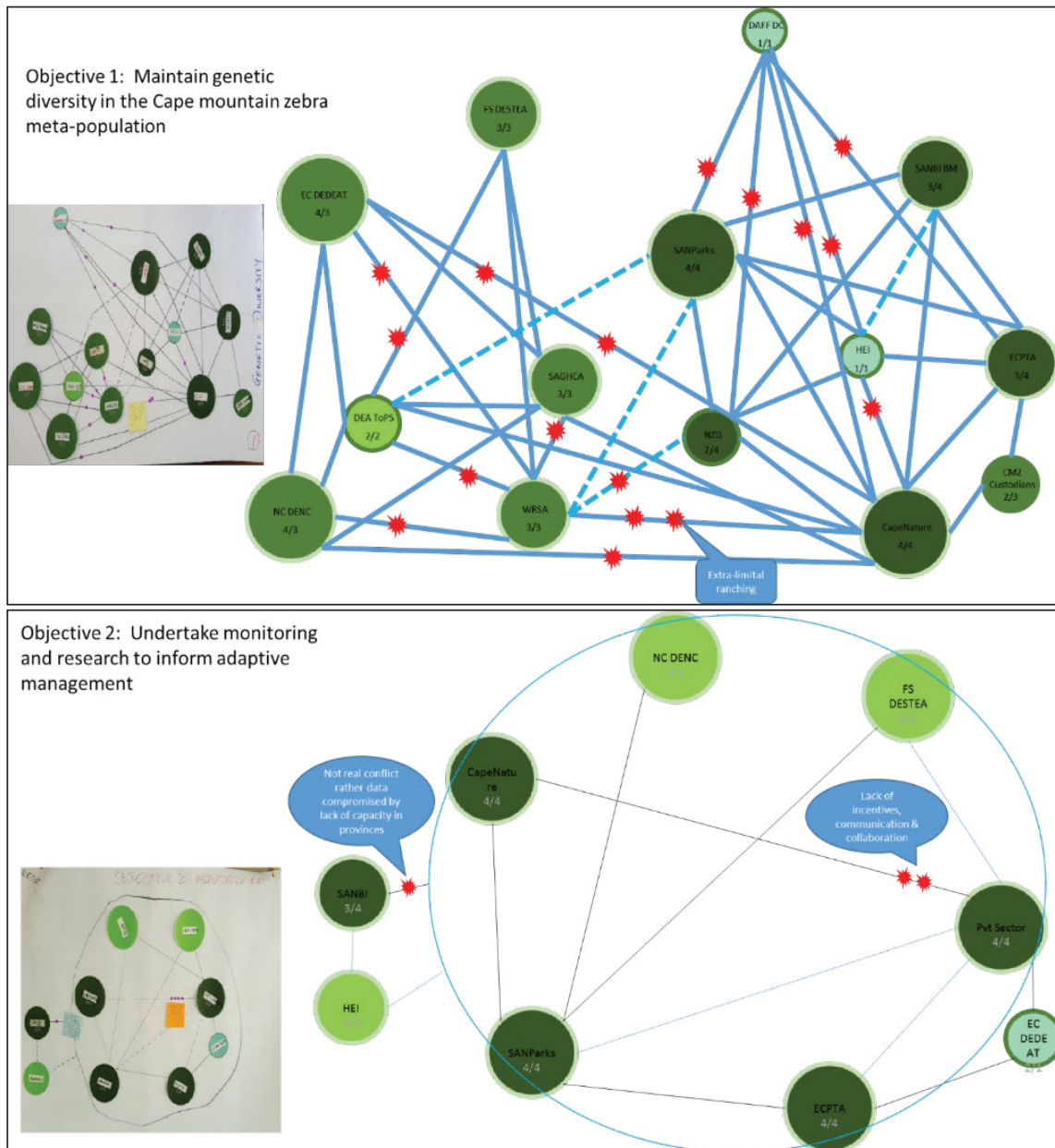
BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

82



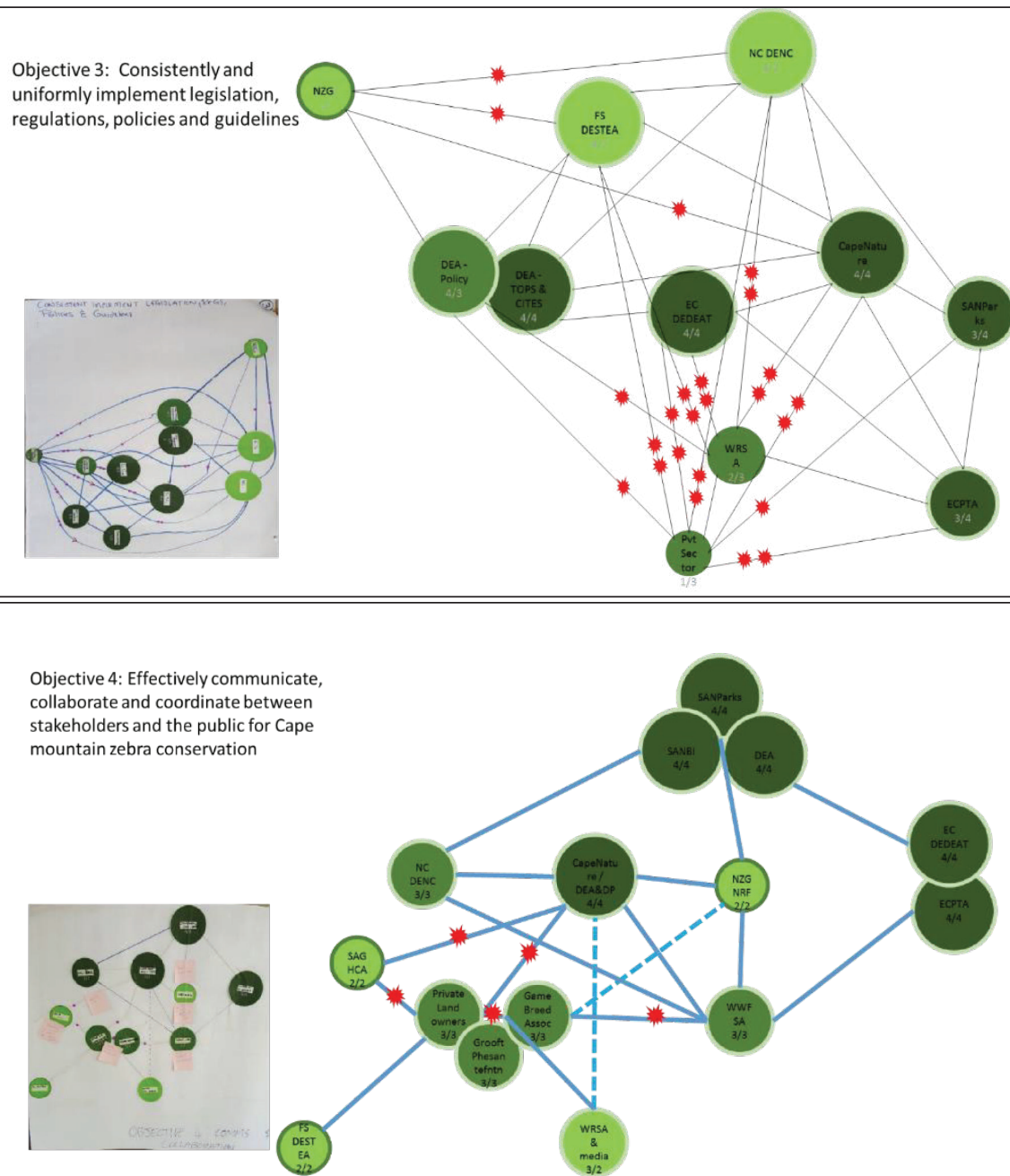
## SCHEDULE

**APPENDIX E: VENN DIAGRAMS ON STAKEHOLDER RELATIONSHIPS TOWARDS ACHIEVING THE OBJECTIVES OF THE BMP-S: ACTIONS AND RELEVANT AGREEMENTS WORKSHOP FOR THE IMPLEMENTATION OF THE CAPE MOUNTAIN ZEBRA BMP-S**





## SCHEDULE



## SCHEDULE

## APPENDIX F: NOTES

BMP-S: CAPE MOUNTAIN  
ZEBRA IN SOUTH AFRICA

## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

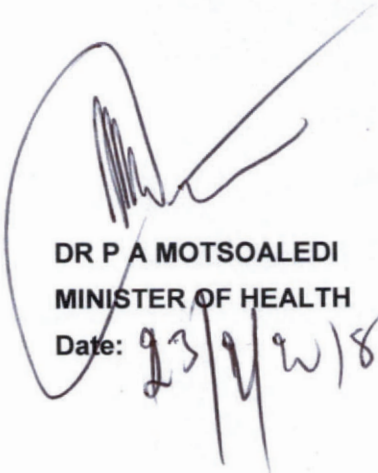
NO. 215

16 MARCH 2018

## THE SOUTH AFRICAN DENTAL TECHNICIANS COUNCIL

## NOTICE REGARDING ANNUAL FEES PAYABLE TO THE COUNCIL

I, Pakishe Aaron Motsoaledi, Minister of Health, hereby fix, in terms of section 49 of the Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act No. 19 of 1979) ("the Act"), and on the recommendation of the South African Dental Technicians Council (hereinafter referred to as "the Council"), the fees set out in the Schedule as the fees to be paid to the Council.



DR P A MOTSOLEDI  
MINISTER OF HEALTH

Date:

23/3/2018

## SCHEDULE

### Annual fees payable by dental technicians and dental technologists

1. Any person who, in terms of section 18 of the Act –
  - (a) is registered, shall pay to the Council an amount of **R 1,685-00** as an annual fee for the period 1 March 2018 to 28 February 2019; or
  - (b) is registered during such period shall pay to the Council an amount of **R842.50** as an annual fee in respect of the unexpired portion of that year.

### Annual fees payable by permit holders for trading in un-mounted artificial teeth

2. Any person who, in terms of section 33(3) of the Act –
  - (a) registers with the Council as a dental trader, shall pay to Council a registration fee of an amount of **R 8,560-00**;
  - (b) is issued with a permit by the Council selling Unmounted teeth, shall pay to Council an amount of **R 14,125-00** as an annual fee for the period 1 March 2018 to 28 February 2019 of each financial year; or
  - (c) is issued with a permit by the Council as a Dental Supplier, shall pay to Council an amount of **R 6,420-00** as an annual fee for the period 1 March 2018 to 28 February 2019 of each financial year; or
  - (d) is issued with a permit by the Council during such period shall pay to the Council an amount of **R 3,210-00** as an annual fee in respect of the unexpired portion of that financial year.

### Annual fees payable by dental laboratory assistants

3. Any person who, in terms of section 28(3) of the Act would like to apply for registration as a dental laboratory assistant during 2018, shall pay to the Council an amount of **R 265-00** as an annual fee for the period 1 March 2018 to 28 February 2019.



**Registration fees payable by Informally trained persons**

4. Any person who, in terms of section 23A of the Act would like to apply for registration as a dental technician with restricted registration, shall pay to the Council an amount of **R265-00** for the period 1 March 2018 to 28 February 2019.

**Application fees for CPD Accreditation Activities**

5. Any registered person or service provider of activities related to continuous professional development, shall apply to Council for accreditation of such activity and pay the following fees in terms of section 50(1)(r) of the Act as amended:

a. Application for CPD Activity		<b>R560.00</b>
b. Application for Micro Event		<b>R1175.00</b>
c. Application for Macro Event		<b>R6740.00</b>
d. Late Application		<b>R2355.00</b>
e. Roadshow/s	One show	<b>R900.00</b>
	Two or more shows	<b>R965.00</b>
i. Non-profit Interest Group		<b>R0.00</b>
ii. Profit making – Special Interest Group		<b>R750.00 per annum</b>

**Liability**

6. The annual fees referred to in-
- (a) paragraphs 1(a) and 2(a) shall be due on period 1 March 2018 of the financial year concerned shall be payable not later than 31 March of that financial year; and
- (b) paragraphs 1(b) and 2(b) shall be due on the day of the registration concerned or the permit is issued, as the case may be, and shall be payable on or before the last day of the third month following that day, or on 31 March of that financial year, whichever date is the earlier.
7. (1) If a person referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2, as the case may be, does not pay the annual fees referred to in the aforementioned paragraphs by the relevant date referred to in paragraph 3, the registrar shall send a reminder by e-mail and/or registered post to such dental technician's or the permit holder's address, as the case may be, as entered in the Register.

- (2) If a person referred to in paragraphs 1 and 2 does not pay the annual fees within three (3) months after the date on which the reminder referred to in subparagraph (1) was sent to him or her, his or her name shall be removed from the register concerned in terms of section 24(1) or the permit be withdrawn in terms of section 33(4) of the Act as the case may be.
8. (1) A person referred to in paragraph 4 whose name has been removed from the register concerned or whose permit has been withdrawn, may be restored to such register in terms of section 24(5) of the Act, or his permit be restored, if such person-
- (a) within a period of six (6) months after the date on which his or her name was removed from the register concerned, pays the equivalent of two (2) times the annual fee referred to in paragraph (a) or 2(a), including any other outstanding fee(s);
- or
- (b) after a period of six (6) months has expired after the date on which his or her name was removed from the register concerned, pays the equivalent of five (5) times the annual fee referred to in paragraph 1(a) or 2(a), including any other outstanding fee(s).

### **Exemption**

9. (1) The Council may by resolution, order the Registrar to partially exempt any dental technician or dental technologist for an indefinite or definite period, from the age of 70 years from payment of any annual fee prescribed in terms of subparagraph 1, if the Council is satisfied that such a dental technician or dental technologist-
- (a) has a written application by way of an affidavit accompanied by a certified copy of a valid identity document, before 28 February preceding the year for which exemption is sought or applied for, and
- (b) has attained the age of 70 years; and
- (c) has paid the prescribed fee of **R 560.00**.



- (2) Dental Technicians/Technologist will be required to pay 10% of the normal annual fees which is **R 168-50**.
- (3) Contactors will be required to pay 10% of the annual fees which is **R 492-00**.
- (4) List of all Council fees for 2018/2019 attached as Annexure "A"

**Value added tax**

10. All fees referred to in the notice shall include 14% value-added tax.

**Commencement**

11. This notice shall come into operation on 1 March 2018.

**Withdrawal of notice**

12. Government Notice No. **224 of 14 March 2017** is hereby withdrawn.

## THE SOUTH AFRICAN DENTAL TECHNICIAN COUNCIL

### PROPOSED FEES FOR 2018

*These include VAT*

code	Note	CATEGORY	YEAR 2018
<b><u>Registration / Reregistration</u></b>			
0001		REGISTRATION FEE - Student	R 110,00
0002		REGISTRATION FEE - Lab Assistant	R 265,00
0003		REGISTRATION FEE - Informally Trained Person	R 265,00
0004		REGISTRATION FEE - Technician / Technologist	R 295,00
0005		REGISTRATION FEE - New Laboratory	R 9 415,00
0006		REGISTRATION FEE - Dental Supplier	R 8 560,00
<b><u>Annual Fees</u></b>			
0007		ANNUAL FEE - Student	R 110,00
0008		ANNUAL FEE - Lab Assistant	R 265,00
0009		ANNUAL FEE - Informally Trained Person	R 265,00
0010		ANNUAL FEE - Technician / Technologist	R 1 685,00
0011	#	ANNUAL FEE - Laboratory	R 4 920,00
0012		ANNUAL FEE - National/Provincial/ Local Government Hospitals/ clinic with associated Dental Laboratory	R 4 920,00
0013		ANNUAL FEE - Training Institutions (UoT's), Which includes programme review & any inspections	R 22 470,00
0014		ANNUAL FEE - Dental Supplier	R 6 420,00
0015		ANNUAL FEE - Supplying sell UNMOUNTED Teeth (this is on top of Supplier Fee 0014)	R 14 125,00
0016		ANNUAL FEE - Technician / Technologist over 70 YEARS	R 170,00
<b><u>Other Fees</u></b>			
0017		EXEMPTION FEE -	R 560,00
0018		CHANGE - in Laboratory ownership (without name change) addition / removal of partners	R 1 175,00
0019		CHANGE - in Laboratory location due to non compliance	R 7 060,00
0020	+	CHANGE - in Laboratory location due to outside influences (Forced)	R 1 010,00
0021		*DUPLICATION CERTIFICATE	R 355,00
0022		*REGISTER E-mail / PRINTING FEE	R 590,00
0023		*LABEL PRINTING FEE	R 1 175,00
0024		*DENTAL TECHNICIANS ACT (including shipping etc.)	R 470,00
<b><u>CPD Fees</u></b>			
0025		APPLICATION FEE - for CPD Activity	R 560,00
0026		APPLICATION FEE - for Micro Event – CPD	R 1 175,00
0027		APPLICATION FEE - for Macro Event – CPD	R 6 740,00
0028		APPLICATION FEE - Late CPD Activity	R 2 355,00
0029		APPLICATION FEE - Roadshow (same programmer with in financial year no matter number sites & each event HAS its own number)	R 965,00
0030		APPLICATION FEE - Application by a Special Interest Group	R -
0031		APPLICATION FEE - Individual application Attending non DT activity, international lecture or course, or acquiring higher qualification	R -
0032		APPLICATION FEE - Non profit Interest Group (study groups, talking to each other on case)	R -
0033		APPLICATION FEE - Profit Making – Special Interest Group ( Implant society,, CSID,	R 750,00

## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 216

16 MARCH 2018

## HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT, 1974 (ACT NO.56 OF 1974)

REGULATIONS RELATING TO THE SPECIALITIES AND SUBSPECIALITIES IN  
MEDICINE AND DENTISTRY: AMENDMENT

The Minister of Health intends, in terms of section 35 of the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 of 1974), and after consultation with the Health Professions Council of South Africa, to make the regulations in the Schedule.

Interested persons are invited to submit any substantiated comments or representations on the proposed regulations to the Director-General of Health, Private Bag X828, Pretoria, 0001 (for attention of the Director: Public Entities Governance: [mihloti.mushwana@health.gov.za](mailto:mihloti.mushwana@health.gov.za)), within three months of the date of publication of this Notice.



.....

DR AARON MOTSOLEDI, MP

MINISTER OF HEALTH

DATE: 8/2/2018



## SCHEDULE

### Definitions

1. In these regulations **“the regulations”** means Regulations relating to the Specialities and Subspecialities in Medicine and Dentistry published under Government Notice No. R. 590 of 29 June 2001, as amended by Government Notices Nos. R. 1457 of 13 December 2004, R. 712 of 17 August 2007, R. 645 of 22 August 2012, and R. 971 of 02 September 2016, and any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the regulations shall bear such meaning, unless the context indicates otherwise—

### Amendment of regulation 2 of the regulations

2. Regulation 2 of the regulations is hereby amended—
- (a) by the deletion in sub regulation (1) of the speciality **“Physical medicine”**, and the note following this speciality;
  - (b) by the insertion in sub regulation (1) of the speciality **“Sports and Exercise Medicine; and**
  - (c) by the substitution, in sub regulation (2), for the speciality **“Oral Pathology..... Oral Pathologist”** of the following speciality:

**“Oral and Maxillofacial pathology ..... Oral and Maxillofacial pathologist”**

### Amendment of regulation 3 of the regulations

3. Regulation 3 of the regulations is amended—
- (a) by the deletion of the following subspecialities and any note following these subspecialities:
    - (i) “Medical Genetics;
    - (ii) Occupational Health; and
    - (iii) Paediatric Surgery”
  - (b) by the insertion, in alphabetical order, of the following subspecialities:
    - (i) “Addiction Psychiatry;
    - (ii) Community Paediatrics;
    - (iii) Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry;

- (iv) Hepatology;
- (v) Paediatric Emergency Medicine;
- (vi) Urogynaecology"

#### **Amendment of regulation 4 of the regulations**

4. Regulation 4 of the regulations is hereby amended by the insertion, in alphabetical order, of the following registrable subspecialties and basic specialties:

<i><b>Registrable subspecialty</b></i>	<i><b>Basic specialty</b></i>
(i) "Addiction Psychiatry	Psychiatry
(ii) Vascular Surgery	Cardiothoracic surgery
	General Surgery
(iii) Community Paediatrics	Paediatrics
(iv) Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry	Psychiatry
(v) Hepatology	Internal Medicine"
(vi) Paediatric Emergency Medicine	Paediatrics
	Emergency medicine
(vii) Urogynaecology	Obstetrics and Gynaecology
	Urology and Surgery

#### **Amendment of regulation 6 of the regulations**

5. Regulation 6 of the regulations is hereby amended –

- (a) by the substitution for paragraph (a) of subregulation (2) of the following paragraph:

"(a) In the case of the specialties Anaesthesiology, Dermatology, Medical Genetics, Medicine, Neurology, Nuclear Medicine, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Ophthalmology, Orthopaedics, Otorhinolaryngology, Paediatrics, Psychiatry, Radiation

Oncology, and Urology, a person shall have obtained at least four years' satisfactory education and training as the holder of a board-approved post as registrar at a hospital, department or facility accredited by the board for specialist education and training."

- (b) by the addition in subregulation (2) and after paragraph (l) of the following paragraph:

"(m) In the case of the specialities Cardiothoracic Surgery, Diagnostic Radiology, ENT (Otorrhinolaryngology), General Surgery, Neurosurgery, Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Ophthalmology, Orthopaedic Surgery, Paediatric Surgery, Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery, Urology, a person shall have obtained at least five years satisfactory education and training as the holder of a board-approved post as registrar at a hospital, department or facility accredited by the board for specialist education and training."

- (c) by the substitution, for item (aa) of subparagraph (i) of paragraph (a) in subregulation (3), of the following item:

"(aa) the applicant was registered as a medical practitioner in terms of the Act for the full duration of the training of the speciality; and"

#### **Amendment of regulation 7 of the regulations**

6. Regulation 7 of the regulations is hereby amended by –

- (a) the substitution for sub regulation (2) of the following sub regulation:

"(2) In addition to the requirements in subregulations (1), the following requirements shall apply to the specialities listed:

- (a) In the case of the specialities Community Dentistry, Maxillo-facial and Oral Surgery, Oral Medicine and Periodontics, Orthodontics and



Prosthodontics, a person shall have obtained at least four years' education and training as the holder of a post of registrar approved by the board at a hospital, department or facility accredited by the board for specialist education and training.

- (b) In the case of the speciality Oral and Maxillofacial Pathology, a person shall have obtained at least five years' education and training, of, which at least two years shall have been in Pathology (Anatomical) at an academic teaching department of a teaching hospital accredited as such by the board."

(b) by the substitution, for item (aa) of subparagraph (i) of paragraph (a) in sub regulation

(3), of the following item:

- "(aa) the applicant was registered as a dentist in terms of the Act for the full duration of the training of the speciality; and"

#### **Amendment of regulation 10 of the regulations**

7. Regulation 10 of the regulations is hereby amended by the deletion of subregulation (3).

#### **Short Title**

8. Regulations Relating to The Specialities and Subspecialities in Medicine and Dentistry: Amendment

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 130 - PART 2**



# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 633

16 March  
Maart 2018

No. 41498

**PART 2 OF 3**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 217

16 MARCH 2018

## DENTAL TECHNICIANS ACT, 1979

REGULATIONS RELATING TO THE REGISTRATION OF DENTAL  
LABORATORIES AND RELATED MATTERS: AMENDMENT

The Minister of Health has, in terms of section 50(1)(e) of the Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act No. 19 of 1979), and on the recommendation of the South African Dental Technicians Council, made the Regulations contained in the Schedule hereto.

## SCHEDULE

## Definition

1. In this Schedule "the Regulation" means the Regulations published under Government Notice No. R. 308 of 26 February 1982, as amended by Government Notices Nos. R. 1808 of 27 August 1982, R. 196 of 4 February 1983, R. 284 of 15 February 1985, R. 854 of 9 May 1986, R. 668 of 3 April 1987, R. 2440 of 2 December 1988, R. 2914 of 14 December 1990, R. 3156 of 27 December 1991, R. 107 of 22 January 1993, R. 434 of 11 March 1994, R. 194 of 10 February 1995, R. 134 of 2 February 1996, R. 14 of 3 January 1997, R. 1717 of 19 December 1997, R. 1685 of 24 December 1998, R. 8 of 7 January 2000, R. 1363 of 15 December 2000, R. 1321 of 14 December 2001 and R. 1489 of 29 November 2002, R. 468 of 8 April 2004, R. 1380 of 3 December 2004, R. 1233 of 23 December 2005, R. 119 of 16 February 2007, R. 151 of 8 February 2008, R. 182 of 3 March 2011, R. 1016 of 6 December

2011, R. 1079 of 19 December 2012, R. 355 of 12 May 2014, R. 729 of 17 June 2015, R 729 of June 2016, R. 206 of 08 March 2017 .

### **Substitution of regulation 11 of the Regulations**

2. The following regulation is hereby substituted for regulation 11 of the Regulations:

#### **"REGISTRATION FEES**

11. (1) The registration fees for the registration of a dental laboratory under section 30 of the Act shall be R **9,415-00**: Provided that if the ownership of a dental laboratory was changed or transferred in terms of section 30(6) of the Act, the registration fee payable for such a dental laboratory by the new owner shall be R **7,060-00**.
- (2) The registration fee for a dental laboratory which is moved by the owner(s) to new premises shall be R**1,175-00**: Provided that if the moving of such laboratory is due to factors beyond the control of the owner(s), such owner(s) shall pay only a registration fee of R**1,010-00**.
- (3) The registration fees referred to in sub-regulations (1) and (2) includes 14% value-added-tax."

### **Substitution of regulation 12 of the Regulations**

3. The following regulation is hereby substituted for regulation 12 of the Regulations.


#### **"ANNUAL FEES**

12. (1) Every owner/partner/member of a dental laboratory shall pay to the Council an amount of R**4,920-00** as an annual fee for the period 1 March to 28 February of each financial year or part thereof.

- (2) The amount referred to in sub-regulation (1) shall be due on 1 March of each year and shall be payable no later than 31 March of that same year.”

#### **Commencement**

4. These Regulations shall come into operation on 1 March 2018.



**DR A MOTSOLEDI**  
**MINISTER OF HEALTH**  
DATE: 23/2/2018



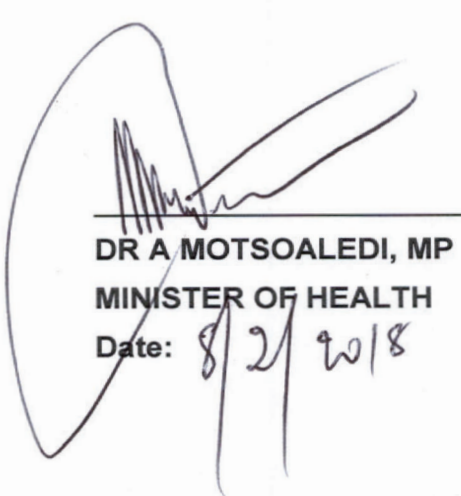
## DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

NO. 218

16 MARCH 2018

**NATIONAL HEALTH CARE ACT, 2003****POLICY GUIDELINES FOR THE LICENSING OF  
RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND  
INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

I, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, Minister of Health, in terms of section 85 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996) and section 3 of the National Health Act, 2003 (Act No 61 of 2003), after consultation with the National Health Council, determined the Policy in the Schedule.



DR A MOTSOLEDI, MP  
MINISTER OF HEALTH

Date: 8/2/2018

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>Definitions</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>1. Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>2. Context</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>3. Purpose of Guidelines</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4. Application of Guidelines</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>5. Legislative Framework</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>6. Guiding Principles</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>7. Licensing and designation</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>8. Application Procedure</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>9. Handling of Applications</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>10. Granting or refusal of license</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>11. Appeal Procedure</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>12. Cancellation of Licence</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>13. Renewal of License</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>14. Compliance and Monitoring</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>15. Rights of Mental Health Care Users</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>16. Facilities and Infrastructure Norms and Standards</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>17. Clinical Governance and Clinical Care</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>18. Clinical Support Services</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>19. Governance and human resources</b>	<b>20</b>

## DEFINITIONS

In these Policy Guidelines any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act No. 17 of 2002), as well as the National Mental Health Policy Framework and Strategic Plan 2013-2020 shall have the meaning so assigned and, unless the context otherwise indicates-

**"applicant"** means a person or organisation that is applying for a licence to provide a mental health service or operate a day care and or residential facility to 5 or more persons with mental illness and/or severe or profound intellectual disability;

**"care"** means the holistic provision for physical, psychological and material support to a mental health care user;

**"day care facility"** includes home-based care, protected workshops and support groups and means a facility that offers services, day time activities and social contact for an individual mental health care user and groups of mental health care users for treatment, rehabilitation, prevention and promotion activities, including such a facility that offers those activities and contact for users with severe and profound intellectual disability;

**"group home"** is a residential care facility and means a home based in the community with a staff complement who provide support with semi-independent living, or supported accommodation, to mentally ill adults and assist them to integrate into the community, as well as vocational groups for individuals who are not able to work in a protective environment;

**"half-way house"** is a residential care facility and means a residence for mental health care users who had either been cared for in their communities, or had been formerly treated in a psychiatric hospital or in a care and rehabilitation centre;

**"home-based care"** refers to services offered at the homes of the mental health care users, providing psychosocial support in the areas of living, learning, socialization and working;



**"facility"** means a building or structure which is ordinarily used in the course of providing services;

**"HOD"** means the Head of the relevant Provincial Department of Health;

**"license"** means a license granted in terms of the Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act No. 17 of 2002) and its General Regulations;

**"manager"** means the person who is the head of health establishment responsible for the day-to-day management of the relevant day care and or residential facility;

**"mental health care user"** as defined by the Act;

**"persons with disabilities"** includes persons who have long-term physical, mental, intellectual or sensory impairments, which in interaction with various barriers may hinder those persons from fully and effectively participating in society on an equal basis with others persons;

**"proprietor"** means an applicant to whom a licence has been granted;

**"protective workshop"** means to provide a protective environment outside of the open labour market, offering vocational services, e.g. vocational guidance, vocational training and selective placement, designed to secure and maintain suitable employment for mentally ill and or severe or profound intellectually disabled persons who cannot be integrated in the open labour market;

**"residential care facility"** includes group homes, halfway houses, supported independent/assisted living facilities and means a facility that offers accommodation, housing or support in homes or facilities to persons with mental illness or severe or profound intellectual disability, and includes board and care homes;

**"support groups"** means a group that meets in a day care facility to provide regular ongoing support for mental health care users, through which they are enabled to increase their functioning so that they can be successful and satisfied with living;

**"supported independent/assisted living"** means ongoing support in the form of individual or group supervision and instruction in basic skills of everyday living that mental health care users receive in the community; and

**"the Act"** means the Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act No. 17 of 2002).

## 1. INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 The Act promotes the provision of community based care, treatment and rehabilitation services. It also obliges persons who provide care, treatment and rehabilitation services to provide such services in a manner that facilitates community care of mental health care users.
- 1.2 The General Regulations to the Act published in Government Gazette No. 27117, Notice No. R1467 of 15 December 2004 further defines which organisations should be licensed, how it should be done and the conditions attached to it.
- 1.3 These Policy Guidelines serve to outline:-
  - (a) the process and procedures for license application;
  - (b) criteria for evaluation of licensing applications;
  - (c) the minimum norms and standards that must be adhered to by residential and day care facilities for people with mental and/or intellectual disabilities and;
  - (d) provide the tools to be used in assessing and reporting on the compliance outcomes.

## 2. CONTEXT

- 2.1 Mental health care users require access to community based mental health services to ensure their recovery and/or attainment of their life goals and potential.



- 2.2 The development of community based mental health residential and day care services and facilities are promoted by the Act, as well as the National Mental Health Policy Framework and Strategic Plan 2013-2020. The development of these services and/or facilities contribute to the successful re-integration of mental health care users into their respective communities and minimises stigma associated with mental illness.
- 2.3 Residential and day care services and/or facilities for persons with mental illness, or intellectual disability have been predominantly provided by non-governmental organisations. These organisations are in the main registered by the National Department of Social Development, licensed by the Provincial Department of Health and funded by either the Provincial Departments of Health and Social Development, and at times by both.
- 2.4 In terms of the General Regulations, any service which is not a designated psychiatric hospital or care and rehabilitation centre, but which provides residential or day care facilities for 5 people or more with mental disorders, must-
- (a) obtain a license from the provincial department concerned to operate; and
  - (b) be subjected to at least an annual audit by designated officials of the provincial department concerned.

### **3. PURPOSE OF GUIDELINES**

The purpose of these Policy Guidelines is to provide a framework for the licensing of residential and day care facilities for persons with mental illness and for persons with severe or profound intellectual disabilities.

### **4. APPLICATION OF GUIDELINES**

- 4.1 These Policy Guidelines apply to every residential care and day care facility which provides care, treatment and rehabilitation for five or more persons with mental illness and or severe and profound intellectual disabilities and which is not a designated psychiatric hospital or care and rehabilitation centre.



- 4.2 Types of residential facilities referred to in paragraph 4.1 include group homes, halfway houses, supported independent living facilities, while types of day care facilities, include home-based care, protected workshops and support groups.

## 5. LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

The following legal prescripts have been used in the formulation of these Guidelines, namely:-

- (a) The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996);
- (b) The National Mental Health Policy Framework and Strategic Plan, 2013 - 2020;
- (c) United Nations Convention on the Rights of persons with Disabilities;
- (d) The Mental Health Care Act, 2002 (Act No. 17 of 2002), and its Regulations;
- (e) Infrastructure Unit Support Systems (IUSS): health facility guides for mental health, 2014. Government notice No. 512, Published in Government Gazette No. 37790 of 30 June 2014;
- (f) National Health Act, 2003 (Act No. 61 of 2003);
- (g) National Core Standards for Health Establishments in South Africa; National Department of Health, 2011;
- (h) Not-for-Profit Organisation Act, 1997 (Act No. 71 of 1997);
- (i) Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993);
- (j) Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No. 1 of 1999);
- (k) Medicine and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act No. 101 of 1965);
- (l) Nursing Act, 2005 (Act No. 33 of 2005);
- (m) Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act No. 53 of 1974);
- (n) Children's Act, 2005 (Act No. 38 of 2005);
- (i) National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No. 103 of 1977).

## **6. GUIDING PRINCIPLES**

- 6.1 Facilities and services providing mental health care, treatment and rehabilitation should ensure the protection of the basic human rights of mental health care users.
- 6.2 Mental health care users should receive care, treatment and rehabilitation in environments which are safe, therapeutic and less restrictive.
- 6.3 The care, treatment and rehabilitation programmes provided in these facilities or services, must promote the physical, spiritual, emotional and social well being of mental health care users.
- 6.4 A multi-disciplinary approach must be followed to provide care, treatment and rehabilitation programmes.
- 6.5 Psycho-social rehabilitation programs must be sensitive to culture and must be evidence based.
- 6.6 There must be collaboration with stakeholders that have a role in the provision of community-based mental health care services including the non- governmental organization, Departments of Labour, Social Development, Basic Education, Human Settlements and Local Government.
- 6.7 Facilities and services must aim at improving social competence by enhancing individuals' social skills, psychological and occupational functioning.
- 6.8 The programmes and services should be planned with mental health care users as far as possible.
- 6.9 The environment where residential and day care services are provided should be accessible and equitable to all regardless of geographical location, economic status, race, gender or social condition, and mental health care services should have parity with general health services.



- 6.10 All organisations who provide residential and day care services to mental health care users should be accountable for the delivery of appropriate, effective and efficient interventions.
- 6.11 Residential and day care services should be offered in the context of the community environment and should provide capacity building and support to communities.
- 6.12 Residential and day care services should offer a wide range of services and programmes that are specific to each mental health care users' developmental and therapeutic needs.
- 6.13 Residential and day care services should be holistic, intersectoral and delivered or supported by a multi-disciplinary team.
- 6.14 Residential and day care facilities should meet all infrastructure requirements as set by the South African Bureau of Standards, municipal by-laws, relevant legislation and policies.

## **7. LICENSING AND DESIGNATION**

- 7.1 Anyone who wishes to operate a residential and/or day care facility which provides care, treatment and rehabilitation for five or more persons with mental illness and/or severe or profound intellectual disability should obtain a licence from the HOD.
- 7.2 Facilities and services under the auspices of the State which provide care, treatment and rehabilitation to persons with mental illness and/or severe or profound intellectual disabilities should be designated by the relevant HOD in terms of the Act.

## 8. APPLICATION PROCEDURE

- 8.1 Any person who intends to operate a residential care facility and/or day care facility should apply to the HOD using the Application Form for Licensing of Residential and Day Care Facilities (Annexure A).
- 8.2 The completed Application Form (Annexure A) must be accompanied by certified copies of the following:-
- (a) Registration documents as a legal person in terms of the South African law or as an NPO/NGO;
  - (b) A service level agreement between the applicant and the District Manager regarding clinical support services, medicines, medical supplies and any other support that the health district will provide;
  - (c) A valid zoning or re-zoning certificate issued by the local municipality;
  - (d) Certificate of occupation certifying that the building meets all building regulation requirements issued by the municipality;
  - (e) A valid Certificate of acceptability issued by Environmental Health Services in terms of the Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfected Act 1972, (Act No. 54 of 1972);
  - (f) A valid health certificate issued by Environmental Health Services in terms of the National Environmental Health Norms and Standards;
  - (g) A health care risk waste management contract;
  - (h) A certificate of compliance in terms of the electrical requirements including the backup generator installation;
  - (i) Clearance certificate for water supply if not reticulated;
  - (j) In the case of a building still to be erected or converted, written proof that the building plans have been approved by the local authority;
  - (k) An approved activity or psychosocial rehabilitation programme;
  - (l) A maintenance plan for the facility;
  - (m) Clinical protocols for care, treatment and rehabilitation;
  - (n) Standard operating procedures/policy for the management of risks of infectious diseases including the reporting of notifiable diseases;
  - (o) Proposed staff establishment for the facility;



- (p) Copy of Business Plan with costing for proposed activities;
- (q) Proof of ownership of property or lease agreement;
- (r) Bank Account Details and three months' bank statement; and
- (s) Valid tax clearance certificate.

## **9. HANDLING OF APPLICATIONS**

9.1 Upon receipt of an application for a licence, the Provincial Department of Health concerned must inform the applicant in writing if the application for a license has been granted or refused.

9.2 The relevant HOD must establish an Adjudication Panel that consists of but not limited to -

- (a) a medical practitioner (psychiatrist or medical officer);
- (b) a psychiatric nurse;
- (c) an occupational therapist;
- (d) a clinical psychologist;
- (e) a social worker;
- (f) a dietician, nutritionist or food service officer;
- (g) a legal practitioner;
- (h) an environmental health practitioner;
- (i) a financial officer; and
- (j) a licensing administrator.

## **10. GRANTING OR REFUSAL OF LICENSE**

10.1 The HOD must on recommendation of the Adjudication Panel, issue or refuse to issue a licence to the applicant.

10.2 The HOD must, if he or she refuses to issue a license to an applicant, provide reasons for the refusal in writing and must advise the applicant of his or her right to appeal the decision to the Member of the Executive Council for health in the relevant province.

- 10.3 Before the HOD grants or refuses a license, an Inspection Team in the District must conduct a physical inspection of the relevant residential care facility or day care facility and record the outcome in terms of Norms and Standards for Licencing of Residential and Day Care Facilities (Annexure B).
- 10.4 Inspection Teams must be established by the District Manager of the Health District in which the facility or service is located and should comprise of (but not limited to) a psychiatric nurse, a medical practitioner/psychiatrist, occupational therapist, social worker, dietician, environmental health practitioner and other relevant officials, as required.
- 10.5 The license issued must specify:
- (a) the physical and postal address for the facility for which the license has been issued.
  - (b) the duration of the license which may not exceed 12 months.
  - (c) the number of users to be accommodated.
  - (d) the diagnostic categories, legal classification, age-group and gender of users to be accommodated.
  - (e) that the license is not transferrable to any other facilities.
  - (f) the type of service and level of care as specified in Annexure C.

## **11. APPEAL PROCEDURE**

- 11.1 An applicant whose application has been declined or a proprietor whose licence has been cancelled by the HOD may lodge an appeal with the Member of Executive Council for health of the relevant province within 14 calendar days after receipt of the notice from HOD.
- 11.2 The Member of Executive Council concerned must within 30 days of receipt of the Appeal from the applicant, uphold or dismiss the application.



## **12. CANCELLATION OF LICENSE**

12.1 The license of a facility or service may be cancelled if:

- (a) The infrastructure is a health and safety hazard to users, staff and the public.
- (b) The facility contravenes the relevant provincial or national policies on licensing of facilities.
- (c) The facility or service is not maintained in accordance with the Norms and Standards for Licensing of Residential and Day Care Facilities (Annexure B).
- (d) There is a breach of the conditions on which the license was issued.
- (e) The license holder has been declared by a court of law to be unfit as a person to operate the facility or service.

12.2 If the license of the facility or service is cancelled/revoked based on the above, the facility or service must cease to operate within the time-frame which will be specified by the HOD, to allow for the transfer of users to other facilities.

## **13. RENEWAL OF LICENSE**

13.1 The license may be renewed subject to the outcome of the annual audit by the Provincial Department of Health.

13.2 Renewals are only to be considered upon the availability of all audit reports and compliance reports to recommendations.

## **14. COMPLIANCE AND MONITORING**

14.1 Inspection/monitoring Teams in the Districts shall conduct quarterly inspections/monitoring of facilities to monitor compliance to prescripts and record the outcome in terms of the Assessment Tool and Compliance Report for Residential and Day Care Facilities (Annexure D).

- 14.2 The Provincial Departments will conduct annual audits of these facilities and record the outcome in the Assessment Tool and Compliance Report for Residential and Day Care Facilities (Annexure D).
- 14.3 Recommendations for the renewal of a license should be considered upon the availability of an audit report, the Assessment Tool and compliance report.

## **15 RIGHTS OF MENTAL HEALTH CARE USERS**

- 15.1 The rights to equality, non-discrimination, dignity, respect, privacy, autonomy, information and participation should be upheld in the provision of mental health care, treatment and rehabilitation.
- 15.2 The rights to education, health care services, sufficient food, water and social security should be upheld.
- 15.3 The proprietor and manager of a residential or day care facility in question, and any health care practitioner and service provider rendering services at any such facility or service, must obtain informed consent for admission and treatment from a voluntary mental health care user.
- 15.4 The proprietor, manager, health care practitioner and service provider must ensure that a mental health care user incapable of making an informed decision (assisted or involuntary mental health care user) is only admitted for care, treatment and rehabilitation as approved by the responsible Mental Health Review Board in terms of sections 27 and 33 of the Act.
- 15.5 The proprietor, manager, health care practitioner and service provider must ensure that all the rights of a mental health care user under the Act are respected and upheld in accordance with the requirements of the Act.
- 15.6 The proprietor and manager of the relevant residential facility or day care facility must ensure that mental health care users at the facility and their families are provided with adequate information -



- (a) about the health care services available at that facility; and
- (b) about accessing the services in accordance with the Norms and Standards Regulations Applicable to Different Categories of Health Establishments.

15.7 The proprietor and manager must ensure that the mental health care users concerned -

- (a) are attended to in a manner which is consistent with the nature and severity of their health condition as prescribed in the Norms and Standard Regulations Applicable to Different Categories of Health Establishments; and
- (b) have appropriate access to medical and other health care services.

## **16. FACILITIES AND INFRASTRUCTURE NORMS AND STANDARDS**

16.1 There must be a constant supply of running water and proper sanitation that meet environmental health standards.

16.2 The residential facility or day care facility should have a water reservoir with water to last for at least three days.

16.3 The facility must comply with National Building Regulations, contained in Government Notice R2378 published in Government Gazette No 12780 of 12 October 1990, with regards to ventilation and lighting.

16.4 The residential care facility or day care facility must have proper sanitation that complies with the environmental health standard.

16.5 The residential care facility or day care facility must have secure perimeter wall or fence to ensure safety and security.

16.6 Access to the facility must be security controlled.

- 16.7 The layout and design of the residential care facility must provide for sleeping areas, residential caretaker sleeping area, ablution, rehabilitation and recreation room, dining room, family visits room, medical procedures room, food storage/pantry, cooking area/kitchen, laundry, refuse storage area, storeroom, reception and administrative office.
- 16.8 The rooms should be well ventilated with lighting fittings.
- 16.9 Access to the facility must be non-discriminatory and be determined by priority of need alone.
- 16.10 Structural fittings should allow for access for people with physical disabilities.
- 16.11 Must protect users harming themselves/others or property.
- 16.12 The layout and design must allow for easy supervision and observation.
- 16.13 The layout and design should provide enough space for mobility to freely move within the facility.
- 16.14 The building must be maintained in a condition that fosters safety and meets all infrastructure standards in terms of the National Building Regulations, National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No. 103 of 1977) and the Health Infrastructure Norms and Standards Guidelines published in Gazette No. 38776 by notice No. R.414 of 08 May 2015.
- 16.15 The facility must provide for the privacy of mental health care users.
- 16.16 Electrical fittings should be in accordance with the provisions of the Health Infrastructure Norms and Standards Guidelines published in Gazette No. 38776 by notice No. R.414 of 08 May 2015.

16.17 Fire precautionary measures and management procedures should be in accordance with the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No. 103 of 1977).

16.18 Toilets, bathrooms and showers should provide privacy and safety.

16.19 All areas must be clean, safe and reflect as much as possible the preferences of the users living in there.

16.20 Separate accommodation must be provided for children and adults, if housed in the same facility, and provide for gender separation in sleeping and ablution areas.

16.21 The facility must have a functional telephone (landline or facility-based cellular phone).

## **17. CLINICAL GOVERNANCE AND CLINICAL CARE**

17.1 The proprietor/manager must create and maintain a system of health records of the mental health care users concerned in accordance with the requirements of the National Health Act, 2003 (Act No. 61 of 2003).

17.2 The records must include the following information in respect of a mental health care user:

- (a) Biographical data of the user;
- (b) Identification document of the user;
- (c) Contact information of the user and his or her next of kin;
- (d) Information relating to examination and health care interventions of the user; and
- (e) Periodic reviews and reports in accordance with the Act.

17.3 In the event that a user is discharged from the facility, the manager must issue a discharge report to mental health care users in accordance with the Act.



- 17.4 The proprietor and manager may not disclose any information which a mental health care user at the facility is entitled to keep confidential in terms of any law except if it is in accordance with the Act, the National Health Act, 2003 (Act No. 61 of 2003), and the Protection of Personal Information Act, 2013 (Act No. 4 of 2013).
- 17.5 The proprietor/manager must compile daily statistics and submit a report containing those statistics to the relevant provincial department of Health on a monthly basis.
- 17.6 The proprietor/manager must report abscondments, deaths, notifiable diseases and adverse events in accordance with applicable legislation.
- 17.7 The proprietor/manager must establish and maintain clinical assessment and treatment services management systems, facilities, structures and operational procedures that give effect to appropriate medical, psychiatric, nursing, psychological and occupational therapy management, as per acceptable clinical practice, as well as to national and provincial policies and guidelines regarding standard treatment guidelines and essential medications appropriate for the level of service.
- 17.8 The proprietor/manager must ensure that the clinical management of a mental health care user's condition, whether in a maintenance, acute or emergency care phase, occurs in terms of the user's capacity of making informed decisions about his or her mental health care as prescribed in the Act.
- 17.9 The proprietor/manager must establish and maintain any other system, structure and procedure to manage clinical risk as prescribed in the Norms and Standards Regulations Applicable to Different Categories of Health Establishments.
- 17.10 The proprietor/manager must maintain an environment which minimizes the risk of disease outbreaks and the transmission of infection to mental health care users, health care personnel and visitors.



- 17.11 The Facility must manage waste as prescribed in the Environmental Health Norms and Standards.
- 17.12 The facility must manage deaths in accordance with the Birth and Deaths Registration Act, 1992, (Act No. 51 of 1992).
- 17.13 Mental health care users who are on psychotropic drugs and other medications for co-morbid conditions should be monitored for side-effects.
- 17.14 Only appropriately trained and licensed staff members are allowed to administer medication.
- 17.15 Where the User is incapable of managing their medication, all medicines are stored according to package instructions in a lockable cupboard and keys are kept by a responsible person.
- 17.16 The facility should have appropriate rehabilitation, stimulation, skills development and recreational programmes for the users.

## **18. CLINICAL SUPPORT SERVICES**

- 18.1 The proprietor and manager must comply with the provisions of the Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act No. 53 of 1974).
- 18.2 The proprietor and manager must ensure that-
- (a) medication is prescribed, dispensed and reviewed by a skilled and authorised professional and monitored in a manner consistent with provincial resources and guidelines;
  - (b) mental health care users are carefully monitored to prevent, and respond promptly to, any adverse effects of medication;
  - (c) services do not unreasonably withdraw support or deny access to other treatment or support programmes on the basis of a voluntary user's informed decision not to take medication; and

- (d) all medical equipment is available and functional in compliance with relevant legislation.
- (e) medical equipments meets the minimum requirements for the appropriate level of care

## **19. GOVERNANCE AND HUMAN RESOURCES**

### **19.1 The proprietor/manager must ensure that -**

- (a) all health professionals rendering services at the relevant residential facility or day care facility have valid proof of their registration with the relevant statutory body;
- (b) all staff members are screened against the National Register for Sex Offenders contemplated in section 42(2) of the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act No. 32 of 2007);
- (c) the health practitioner that prescribe medication at the relevant residential facility or day care facility has a valid prescribing license;
- (d) the professional staff keep up to date with prescribed continued professional development as well as receiving relevant in-service training; and
- (e) there is a governance structure.

**19.2** The proprietor and manager must keep all relevant documents and records relating to the running of the relevant residential facility or day care facility.

**19.3** The numbers and skill mix of staff should ensure that mental health care users are appropriately treated and cared for at all times.

**19.4** The role and responsibilities of staff members are well-documented and staff is aware of the expectations, and are capable of executing the workload.

**19.5** All staff members should be trained in risk management and understand when to refer clients for expert guidance in the context of multi-professional team.

- 19.6 The staff should have basic training on how to observe and manage difficult or challenging behaviour of and among mental health care users.
- 19.7 Staff induction and ongoing training should make reference to professional regulation and accountability.
- 19.8 Staff must be trained in the use of medical equipment within their scope of practice.
- 19.10 The facility must have written policies and systems, which must include, but not limited to:
- (a) management of complaints and abuses.
  - (b) policy on all aspects of sexual activity (children, adults and staff).
  - (c) infection control.
  - (d) occupational health and safety.
  - (e) quality assurance.
  - (f) visitation.
  - (g) access to communication within means of resources.
  - (h) control of firearms, dangerous weapons and illegal substances.
  - (i) medical management of chronic and acute medical and psychiatric conditions.
  - (j) management of users' assets.
  - (k) smoking policy.
  - (l) fees and tariffs policy.
  - (m) management of disruptive and dangerous behaviour.
  - (n) management of protective measures.
  - (o) management of medicines and medical supplies.



## ANNEXURE A

**health**Department:  
Health

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**APPLICATION FORM FOR LICENSING OF RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH  
MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

## ANNEXURE B

**health**Department:  
Health

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**NORMS AND STANDARDS FOR LICENSING OF RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**



## ANNEXURE B



Department:  
Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

### NORMS AND STANDARDS FOR LICENSING OF RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

#### DELIVERY OF SERVICES

FUNCTIONAL AREA	NORM	STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENT
Type of facility	Day Care	This is a non-residential facility that offers day time activities and social contact for mental health care users and persons with intellectual disability, including development and stimulation/training programmes (incl. self-help skills).			
	Community Residential Care	A residential facility that provides long term care, treatment and rehabilitation to mental health care users who are not able to live with their families and/or independently. The infrastructure standards for residential facilities remain the same, but will be adapted according to the number			

FUNCTIONAL AREA	NORM	STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENT
		of users, the type of service and the needs of the users.			
	Half-way House	A halfway house is a transitional residence for mental health care users who had been either cared for in their communities or formerly institutionalised, designed to facilitate the readjustment and gradual reintegration into community life.			
	Group home	Group homes provide supported accommodation to mental health care users who cannot live independently due to their temporary/permanent mental incapacity, social integration or occupational placement challenges. It also provides the opportunity for mental health care users who have been previously institutionalised to gradually reintegrate into community living.			
	Supported Independent/assisted Living Units	This term refers to the ongoing support in the form of individual or group supervision and instruction in basic skills of everyday living that mental health care users receive in the community.			

FUNCTIONAL AREA	NORM	STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENT
	Supported Independent/assisted Living Units	This term refers to the ongoing support in the form of individual or group supervision and instruction in basic skills of everyday living that mental health care users receive in the community.			
	Halfway House, Group homes and Supported Independent Living Units	<p><b>ALL BUILDINGS MUST BE SINGLE STOREY</b></p> <p><b>Bedrooms:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 2-3 bedrooms accommodation, floor space at least 18 m<sup>2</sup> per bedroom or according to the General Principles of Universal Design Policy (2005).</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Hostel type/Dormitory style accommodation at least 15m<sup>2</sup> per resident – except head of bed all sides 0,6m from walls and unobstructed space between beds of 1,2m or according to the General Principles of Universal Design Policy (2005).</li> </ul> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Maximum of 4 beds per room.</li> </ul> <p>Floor area not less than 7,5m<sup>2</sup> per bed or according to minimum Local Government By-Laws requirement</p> <p><b>OR</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- minimum floor area of any user's room, must be 10m<sup>2</sup> and single rooms shall have a minimum wall length of 2.6m.</li> </ul>			



FUNCTIONAL AREA	NORM	STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENT
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Doors wide enough to accommodate wheelchairs, mobility devices and beds</li> <li>No stairs</li> <li>Ramps for wheelchairs and mobility devices</li> <li>Toilets, baths and showers are designed to fit wheelchair and mobility devices</li> <li>Non-slippery floors</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emergency routes clearly identified, visible during the night and all emergency exists accessible for wheelchairs and other mobility devices.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Closed circuit television cameras is recommended but cameras must be positioned in a way that they do not violate the privacy of mental health care users</li> </ul>			
	Work station	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One centrally placed work station and accessible to all the users.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Counter and work surfaces</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Facility Based Telephone for internal and external communication (landline or cellular)</li> </ul>			
Physical environment to be determined by the type of service to be delivered	Staff rest rooms and toilets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lockers for all staff</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Hand wash basins with soap for the prevention of cross infections</li> </ul>			

Examination/treatment rooms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Toilets for the staff and their visitors</li> </ul>				
	<b>Examination/treatment rooms must have:</b>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Privacy of users to be ensured</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Well-ventilated area.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Electrical plug point for emergency equipment</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enough shelving and cupboards for various stock items</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wash hand basin with hot and cold running water</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Non-slip and non-shining floor.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Painted in light coloured, washable paint.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equipped for first aid and emergency situations.</li> </ul>				
Passages/ Steps/ Staircase/ Ramps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lock-up facility for all medication and scheduled drugs with separate areas for medicines and bandages.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Outside passages covered for protection against elements</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corridors a least 1,8m wide and ideally provided with hand railing along the length of at least one wall.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All corridors and ramps must have a non-slip floor surface and adequately lit and fitted with effective hand rails.</li> </ul>				
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All steps must not be higher than 130mm or narrower than 355mm.</li> </ul>				



[illegible]

Toilets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• One [1] toilet for at least every ten [10] residents of each gender.</li> <li>• A floor area of not less than 2,9m<sup>2</sup>, a minimum width of 1,6m and a door with a width not less than 800mm.</li> <li>• Space between door and toilet.</li> <li>• Height of the toilet pans may not be less than 460mm and more than 480mm from the floor.</li> <li>• Effective support rails must be provided in the toilets</li> <li>• A urinal must be provided in the toilet complex where a facility is developed to be used by more than one male resident.</li> <li>• Toilet roll holder must be placed in easy reach of the user of the toilet – the roll holder may not be placed towards the back of the person sitting in the toilet</li> <li>• Non-shining flooring and easy to clean</li> <li>• Painted in a light colored durable and washable paint</li> <li>• Toilet areas must be well ventilated</li> </ul>					
Toilets for visitors	<p><b>Community residential facilities must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Separate toilet facilities for male and female visitors.</li> <li>• Hand wash basin supplied with constant hot and cold water.</li> </ul>					

Sluice rooms	<b>Sluice rooms in residential and frail care facilities must :</b>							
	• Have a minimum floor area of 15m <sup>2</sup> and a minimum width of 5m <sup>2</sup>							
	• Be well ventilated.							
	• Be equipped with impervious shelves							
	• Provide with a constant supply of hot and cold water							
	• Be equipped with a combination slop hopper sink with a wash facility for bedpans / urinals.							
	• Equipped with an impervious receptacle of adequate capacity with a close-fitting lid for soiled dressings to be removed by recognized medical waste service provider.							
	• Reasonably accessible from bedrooms for people with disabilities.							
	• Equipped with a hand wash basin for staff hand washing							
	• Wall area behind slop hopper sink and hand wash basin must be supplied with a back splash plate or area must be tiled.							
	• Be painted in a washable, durable light coloured paint							
	• Floors must be washable							
	• Storage space for cleaning materials							
Laundry and ironing room	<b>The laundry and ironing room in residential facilities must have:</b>							
	• Well-ventilated laundry area							



				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accessible and adequately equipped for washing and ironing</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Laundry and ironing room must be accessible and adequately equipped for washing and ironing</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shelving must be of an impervious material</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Walls must be painted with durable, washable and light colored paint.</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the laundry is an outside contractor, it must be approved laundry by a registered service provider.</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There must be a separate storage area with slated shelves for clean linen.</li> </ul>				
				<b>Kitchen must have:</b>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A minimum floor area of 16m<sup>2</sup> for at least 32 residents.</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The floor area must be calculated at 0,5m<sup>2</sup> per resident or according to Local Government By-Laws minimum requirements to a maximum size of 90m<sup>2</sup></li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Washing-up area separate from the food preparation area.</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hand wash basin for staff hand washing.</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Separate food preparation basin</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Separate pot wash basin</li> </ul>				
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adequate and constant hot and cold water to all basins.</li> </ul>				

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Impervious, easy to clean work surfaces in all areas.</li> <li>• A safe source of power for cooking purposes.</li> <li>• A suitable means for the effective extraction of heat fumes and gases.</li> <li>• Smooth and even washable wall surfaces.</li> <li>• A facility to maintain perishable food at a temperature below 10°C.</li> <li>• Sufficient suitable storage space for crockery, cutlery and kitchen utensils.</li> <li>• Fire blanket available in the kitchen</li> </ul>				
	Dining hall	<p><b>A dining area must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A minimum floor area of 1,5m<sup>2</sup> per resident with adequate passages and aisles in the dining area according to the Local Government By-Laws.</li> <li>• Approved, suitable and safe artificial heating system in the dining areas.</li> <li>• Non-slip, non-shining floors.</li> <li>• Well-ventilated area</li> </ul>				
	Recreation Area / Lounges	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The floor area of not less than 1,5m<sup>2</sup> per resident as per the Local Government By-Laws.</li> <li>• This area must be designed and situated in such a way that it can also be used for occupational therapy</li> <li>• There must be adequate storage facilities for linen, furniture, suitcases, cleaning detergents, medicines and any harmful substances</li> </ul>				
	Storage facilities					



Administration Office	Proper and adequate ventilation/heating/cooling/lighting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The facility must have suitable, furnished administrative offices on the premises.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The office must have proper and adequate ventilation/heating/cooling and lighting</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must have adequate cross ventilation</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must have proper lighting, not glazing</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Safe heating and cooling system in the rooms and the dining areas. (heating system position in such a way not to jeopardize the safety of the resident and not damaging any of the structures of the building).</li> </ul>			
		<b>Secure and safe environment must have the following:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Security in accordance with local conditions</li> </ul>			
Secure and safe environment		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows and doors must be adequately protected or guarded to ensure the safety of residents.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emergency exits and routes practical and clearly identified and visible at night.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Controlled access to facility</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Support railings on one side of corridors</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Non-slip and non-shining flooring surfaces</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All carpets suitably and safely secured to the floor</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loose coverings must be removed</li> </ul>			

				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Security of personal effects of staff and residents</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Security and control over medication</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Existence of emergency and disaster plan</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fire-fighting equipment in accordance with Occupation, Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993 – Fire protection certificate issued by Fire Department</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appropriate 24-hour communication system (internal and external)</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individual lockers for staff personal items</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individual lockable cupboards for each resident</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Smoke detectors</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Programmes for prevention of injuries and infections</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Access to an area to undertake private discussions and interviews.</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There must be beds with mattress, chair and private, safe and lockable cupboard for each resident</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Care equipment, e.g. crutches, wheel chairs, bedpans etc.</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adequate clean bed linen, blankets, pillows and towelings per bed</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Catering equipment must be available</li> </ul>			
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Laundry equipment must be available</li> </ul>			




		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comprehensive multi-disciplinary report</li> <li>• Admission policy and code of conduct to be in line with Mental Health Care Act</li> <li>• Information on the organization and services rendered provided</li> <li>• Information accessible to all</li> <li>• Standardized Admission Policy and Procedure</li> <li>• Standardized Admission Form</li> </ul>				
<b>Capacity building</b>	Support for caregivers including family Volunteer programmes	<p>The facilities must provide awareness/outreach programmes</p> <p><b>Volunteer programmes must:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Measure the response e.g. donations, visits, volunteers</li> <li>• Volunteer projects developed, costed, with timelines and roles and responsibilities</li> </ul>				
	An informed and supportive community	There must be information sharing and awareness sessions and partnership with the communities				
<b>Care programme</b>	Comfortable clean, healthy and satisfied residents	<p><b>Residential care must include:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Individualized care management plan for all residents</li> <li>• Adherence to approved health/clinical, nursing and pharmaceutical laws, protocols, policies and procedures</li> <li>• Nutrition and hydration according to dietary requirement</li> </ul>				

				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Users must be appropriately dressed, presentable and clean</li> </ul>			
	FOR RENEWALS			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>physical and mental well being of users</li> </ul>			
	Daily activities			<p><b>Supported and residential facilities must ensure optimal mobility of residents during the day which must include:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Socialization through social and functional activities</li> <li>Residents should be out of bed during the active hours (where possible).</li> <li>Daily activities will include stimulation, recreation, leisure and ADL, pre-vocational and life skills training</li> <li>Quarterly Multi-disciplinary team reports</li> </ul>			
<b>Supported programme</b>	Facilitate the provisioning of affordable, safe and accessible living facilities			<p><b>Supported and residential facilities must provide the following:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Programmes to provide optimal independent living</li> <li>Affordable accommodation by means of rates concessions</li> <li>Cultural sensitive environment</li> <li>Programmes to support their families and spouse/partners to provide care and support</li> <li>Accessibility of community care and support services</li> <li>Community re-integration</li> </ul>			



Information on access to health and social welfare services	Provision of affordable, accessible and appropriate health and social welfare services	<p>programmes</p> <p><b>Supported living/residential facilities must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• access to primary health care services affordable curative care, i.e. hospitals and day hospitals</li> <li>• accessibility to social welfare services</li> <li>• accessibility to multi-purpose services</li> </ul>			
Information on access to transport	Access to transport	<p><b>supported living/residential facilities must:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promote the accessibility of public transport</li> <li>• Lobbying for friendly and safe transport system/programmes</li> <li>• Transport available to access support services</li> </ul>			
Support to caregivers	Support to caregivers	<p><b>Supported living/residential facilities must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Programmes to train, develop and support caregivers</li> <li>• Information and referral systems to support caregivers</li> <li>• Dissemination of information on health and social welfare services for caregivers.</li> </ul>			
Provision of assistive devices	Access to assistive devices	<p><b>Supported living/residential facilities must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information on access to lending depots</li> <li>• Information on access to available assistive devices</li> <li>• Information on maintenance of</li> </ul>			

[illegible]

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Providing 3 nutritional meals per day, and an additional 1.5 lt fluids during the day plus 0.5 liters at night, and including at least 1 snack in the evening for special diets e.g. Diabetics</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A pre-planned cycle of varied and balanced meals</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Special diets in accordance with medical needs of the residents</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accommodation of cultural and religious preferences where feasible.</li> </ul>			

## CLINICAL GOVERNANCE AND CLINICAL CARE

FUNCTIONAL AREA	NORM	STANDARD	YES	NO	COMMENT
USER INVOLVEMENT	User forum	<b>Supported/residential facilities must have the following:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>regular meetings with users</li> <li>development plans for users in assisting in the management of the facility</li> <li>Regular reports to the residents</li> </ul>			
Statutory requirements	Residential facilities should adhere to statutory requirements	<b>Supported/residential facilities and day care facilities must adhere to the following statutory requirements:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Must be registered according to the Policy guidelines on residential facilities for people with disabilities.</li> </ul>			



		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Registration certificates of the facilities must be displayed.</li> <li>• There must be training programs to ensure working knowledge</li> <li>• All professionals working in residential facilities must be registered with their applicable registration bodies</li> </ul>				
Protection and promotion of the rights of people with disabilities		<p><b>Rights of people with disabilities must be protected through the following:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keeping of all legislative registers in terms of all relevant local, regional and, international obligations which SA signatory to</li> <li>• Complete MHCA documents</li> </ul> <p>For example ( Complaints register, restraints register, convicted person register, medication Registers, Code of Conduct of Caregivers)</p> <p><b>Contracts between the service provider/organization and the HOD to ensure that the services are provided should include the following:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date of occupation</li> <li>• Type of accommodation</li> <li>• Services to be provided which include boarding &amp; lodging which includes at least three nutritionally balanced meals per day taking into account health status of the resident</li> <li>• Specific clinical indicators identified</li> <li>• Nursing and ensuring medical attention</li> <li>• Bed &amp; bath linen</li> <li>• Laundry services</li> </ul>				

[illegible]



Asset management	Utilization and management of assets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Financial policy and delegation are approved by the service provider</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The payment of accounts and receipt of income is done in accordance with financial policy</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All external and internal audit reports must be submitted to the service provider and must be in the minutes of the meetings of the service provider.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monthly minutes of operational meetings/communication with staff</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual report and financial statements to department.</li> </ul>			
		<p><b>Supported living/Residential and day care facilities must adhere to the prescripts of asset management:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Preventative maintenance program approved by service provider</li> <li>Asset register to differentiate between government assets and assets acquired through other means</li> <li>Assets are comprehensively insured</li> <li>Regular inspections performed and reported at meetings of the service provider</li> <li>Evaluation procedures in place</li> </ul>			
Human resource management	Skilled Human resource management	<p><b>Supported living/ residential and day care facilities must have:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Human resource policy approved by service provider to ensure best practices exist</li> </ul>			

					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Staff recruitment policy approved by service provider</li> <li>• Relevant Acts and Regulations, Policies and Procedures must be available and adhered to</li> <li>• Job description to be kept in each staff member's file</li> <li>• Contract of employment which includes of the rights of people with disabilities</li> <li>• Personal file of each staff member kept</li> <li>• Staff records e.g. leave / sick leave, family responsibility leave up to date</li> <li>• Training programmes for staff implemented</li> <li>• Induction program in place</li> <li>• Evaluation program in place</li> <li>• Grievance procedure available</li> <li>• Disciplinary code available</li> </ul>						
		Staffing model for all facilities	<p>The staffing component in supported living/residential facilities must have is to be determined by the service provider regarding the services to be rendered.</p> <p>The following category staff is required for a 30 bed facility</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 Manager</li> <li>• 1 Administrative Assistant(s) residents</li> <li>• 1 PN, 2 ENA</li> <li>• Sessional OT/SW/PT</li> <li>• 1:10 Caregivers for psychiatric disabilities</li> <li>• 1:5 caregivers for severe to profound ID</li> </ul>								

<b>Rights and Responsibilities of</b>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 Household supervisor</li> <li>• 5 General workers (laundry, kitchen/cleaner)</li> <li>• 1 Cook(s)</li> <li>• 1 Handyman/driver/gardener</li> </ul>						
			<b>Supported/residential and day care facilities must have:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Declaration on the Rights of persons with disabilities signed, explained and displayed</li> <li>• Programmes must promote and maintain the status of MHCU</li> </ul>						
			<b>Supported/residential and day care facilities must have:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Register on abuse - MHCA 02 to be completed</li> <li>• Procedure for management of abuse, neglect, ill-treatment and exploitation to be adhered to</li> <li>• Train staff and implement the protocol on abuse of MHCU</li> <li>• Training programmes for caregivers</li> <li>• Training programmes for survivors to deal effectively with abuse (survivors empowerment program)</li> <li>• Personal safety and security awareness programmes</li> <li>• Recipients / family adhere to the spirit and letter of the admission contract</li> <li>• Recipients / family respect the social, cultural and religious beliefs of their fellow recipients of service / residents</li> <li>• Recipients and / or their family remain</li> </ul>						



					active and self-reliant as far as possible				
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recipients/family freely participate in all programmes</li> </ul>				
					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recipients/ family do not engage in practices that may endanger and / or disturb the lives, health and well-being of others</li> </ul>				
<b>Data information system</b>	Collection of reliable and valid information for an informed public on available services in the residential facilities				<b>Supported/residential and day care facilities must have:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reliable baselines information on all programmes and services rendered by the facilities.</li> <li>Demographic profiles of the community in which the facilities are located</li> <li>Situational analysis of the community in which the facilities are located.</li> <li>Directory of service providers in the vicinity of the facility.</li> </ul>				
<b>Nursing care administration</b>	Provision of acceptable standards for continuous care				<b>Supported/residential and day care facilities must:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provide the vision, mission statement, goals and objectives available to all categories of staff</li> <li>Provide appropriate deployment and utilization of staff, including adequate supervision from trained professionals</li> <li>Provide appropriate staffing and scheduling to ensure the effective and efficient management of care and support programs</li> </ul>				

Individualised development plan	Individual development plan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide continuous professional development program supervision</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of registers</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation in accordance with legislation</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Manage risks in the facility</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide effective quality assurance program and policy in</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement assessment programmes to determine any possible risk factors that need to be taken in consideration when developing individual care plans</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set goals for care plans for all residents</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement individual development plans</li> </ul>			
		<b>All the residents in supported/residential and day care facilities must have the following information:</b>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A personal record of each person in the facility</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Each person /family confirms that there is an individualized development plan and that they participate in its development'</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An accessible development plan has been explained and understood MHCU and/or the family</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular individual plans regularly reviewed and do participate in changing their IDPs</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The IDP reflects the development the goals and expectations as outlined in the broader care plan</li> </ul>			



Provision of specialized services	Specific care and support programmes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A record of the name and details of the immediate family member or responsible person to be consulted in cases of emergency or health care decision making</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An assessment document completed within 48 hours of admission to the service, to be reviewed monthly or more frequently, if indicated.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A care plan to be updated in conjunction with regular assessments and identification of lifestyle risks</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Relevant records and documentation in accordance with legislative requirement.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reality Orientation Programs</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular programmes appropriate for the needs and limitations for the persons being cared for.</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• safekeeping of users records</li> </ul>			
		<b>Community residential facilities must provide specific care and support programmes: Each resident including information relating to:</b>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personal hygiene needs</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nutritional and fluid requirements and assistance</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mobility and transfers</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Night time special requirements (e.g. Applying cot sides at night to prevent falls)</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bathing</li> </ul>			
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excretory needs</li> </ul>			

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medication management, administration and regular review.</li> <li>• Prevention of pressure sores, including mobilization, turning, pressure care.</li> <li>• Access to immunization according to recommended guidelines.</li> <li>• Safety needs</li> <li>• Stimulation programmes</li> <li>• Rehabilitation services and a programme</li> <li>• Physiotherapy and occupational services where applicable.</li> <li>• Palliative care (respect and dignity of the terminally ill residents in the facilities)</li> <li>• Protocol in place when transferring older persons with disabilities to a facility for frail care services</li> <li>• Provision of assistive devices</li> <li>• Physiotherapy and occupational therapy services</li> </ul>							
		Rehabilitation services							
	<b>Sports and recreation</b>	Sport and recreational activities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular programmes appropriate for the needs and limitations for the persons being cared for.</li> <li>• All persons to be out of bed at least twice a day and appropriately dressed.</li> <li>• Participation in organized activities, including but not limited to reading, radio and TV, religious and cultural activities</li> </ul>						
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Program for normal and deep cleaning to be in place</li> </ul>						
	<b>Health and safety</b>	Cleaning services							

29



[illegible]



## ANNEXURE C



**TYPES OF SERVICES AND LEVELS OF CARE FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR PERSONS  
WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

**ANNEXURE C**  
**TYPES OF SERVICES AND LEVELS OF CARE FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

The levels of care required by users will determine the particular service they require and will directly impact the resource allocation, infrastructure, and staffing needs.

Users can be categorised as requiring 100% care, this is 24 hour care and high care, or as requiring partial assistance with some activities and finally, as being independent, but requiring some support through their recovery process.

100% or 24 hour care	Partial assistance	Independent
Users will need 24 hour care and full assistance with feeding, bathing, dressing, turning, positioning, stimulation, etc	Users require partial assistance in the form of reminders, physical assistance and guidance through their daily activities.	Users are able to perform most daily activities, including work and social activities, independently, but may require some external support and guidance.
Users may require constant supervision and one-to-one care in managing their behaviour and ensuring the safety of themselves, others and property.	Users may be verbal and able to perform activities of daily living, but display poor quality in the performance of these duties.	Users may need support in decision making, goal planning and execution.
	Users can participate in daily activities but may require assistance with certain tasks. Some supervision is required in the execution of daily tasks and activities.	Users can engage in individual and group support structures and require assistance with higher cognitive problem solving.



## ANNEXURE C

## Day care services/centres for mental health care users

Component	Children with severe to profound intellectual disability (maximum 15 )	Adults with Severe to profound intellectual disability (maximum 15 )	Adults with Severe psychiatric disabilities (maximum 15 )
HR	<p>Trained Caregivers, 1 Cleaners 1 Admin/ Manager 1 Driver/ maintenance 1 cook/kitchen aid Access support services MDT in districts 1 trained caregiver :5 users 1 PN</p>	<p>Trained Caregivers, 1 Cleaner 1 Admin/ Manager 1 Driver/ maintenance 1 Cook/kitchen aid Access support services MDT in districts 1 trained caregiver:5 users 1 PN</p>	<p>Trained Caregivers, 1 Cleaners, 1 Admin/ Manager 1 Driver/maintenance 1 Cook/kitchen aid Access support services MDT in districts 1 trained caregiver:10 users 1 PN</p>
Training	<p>All caregivers trained in first aid, management of difficult behaviour, handling of medication and side effects, feeding and positioning. Ongoing training to be provided on clinical and administrative</p>	<p>All caregivers trained in first aid, management of difficult behaviour, handling of medication and side effects, feeding and positioning. Ongoing training to be provided</p>	<p>All caregivers trained in first aid, management of difficult behaviour, handling of medication and side effects. Identification of early warning signs. able to access emergency services. Ongoing training to be provided</p>
Infrastructure	<p>Access control Accessible facilities Facilities in residential home:</p>	<p>Access control Accessible facilities Facilities in residential home: Special</p>	<p>Access control Accessible facilities Facilities in residential home: Special</p>

## ANNEXURE C

	Special consent use approval (municipality) or as stipulated by the municipality	consent use approval (municipality) or as stipulated by the municipality	consent use approval (municipality) or as stipulated by the municipality
	-fire extinguisher	-fire extinguisher	-fire extinguisher
Room	Quantity	Description	
Reception and administration space	1	Desk, telephone, administrative shelves	
	User toilets	Gender separated	
	Hand basins	1	
Dining room	1	Mixed, for all residents (include tables and chairs for nr of residents)	
Kitchen	1	Food preparation area	
Pantry	1	Food storage area	
Scullery	1	Built-in dish wash area	
Recreational area	1	Shared area	
Office	1		
Treatment room	1		
Work/ activity area	3	With electricity outlets	
Storeroom	1	With shelves	
Staff rest room and toilet	1	Fitted with seating and telephone	
Educational area	1	Appropriate seating and tables	
Rehabilitation area	1	OT, Physio	



## ANNEXURE C

	General office	1	For all staff, sessional staff, educators, volunteers, etc
Programme	Programme with diverse activities, incl. ADL, stimulation programmes, recreation and leisure. Programme developed, graded and monitored by MDT, can be implemented by caregivers.	Programme with diverse activities, incl. ADL, stimulation programmes, recreation and leisure. Programme developed, graded and monitored by MDT, can be implemented by caregivers.	Programme with diverse activities, incl. ADL, vocational and life skills training, recreation and leisure. Programme developed, graded and monitored by MDT, can be implemented by caregivers.
Funding	Subsidised income Care dependency grant - % towards fees Costing model to be developed	Subsidised income Disability grant - % towards fees Costing model to be developed	Subsidised income Disability grant - % towards fees Costing model to be developed
Governance	Meet all legislative requirements	Meet all legislative requirements	Meet all legislative requirements
Clinical management	- administration of medication with accurate recordkeeping - access to emergency medical services - adherence to norms and standards	- administration of medication with accurate recordkeeping - access to emergency medical services - adherence to norms and standards	- administration of medication with accurate recordkeeping - access to emergency medical services - adherence to norms and standards

**Group homes and Halfway houses**

Specifications for group homes and halfway houses, as provided by IUSS facility guide for mental health.

Room	Quantity	description
Individual bedrooms with clothes cupboards	30% of rooms	The rooms should be positioned with separation of male and female residences
Double rooms	70% of rooms	
Ablution areas	Bathrooms with showers only	Shared bathrooms, gender separated
	Toilets (nr to be calculated-1:10)	Gender separated
	Hand basins	Numbers to be calculated(1:10)
Shared laundry area	1	Heavy duty washing machine and tumble dryer
		Fully equipped with drainage and an outside wash line
		Ironing area
		Linen room
Shared dining area	1	Tables and chairs
Shared kitchen	1	Fridge, stove, microwave, double sink, lockable cupboards and work tops for food preparation
Refuse area	1	Lockable space for kitchen and household waste
Large household store	1	Lockable storage for donations, furniture or extra bulk
Pantry	1	Lockable food storage
Scullery	1	Built in wash basin with drip trays, dish washing area
Shared lounge area	1	Shared area with a fitted TV
Rehabilitation area	1	Installed with plugs for equipment, can be used as a work

## ANNEXURE C

		area, with tables
Store room	2	1 installed with shelves
Administrative office	1	Office furniture, desk, lockable shelves, computer, and a safe
Family lounge	1	Small reception lounge
Administrative area	1	Meeting room, admission area
Physical activity room/gym	optional	
Shared laundry area		Washing lines
Care taker or housemother	1	Sleeping and ablution area

**Home-based care**

Home based care refers to services offered at the homes of the people with mental disorders, providing psychosocial support in the areas of living, learning, socialising and working.

These services can be provided by ward based community outreach teams or by current day care service providers, and would generally require 1:1 care. Care may include, monitoring compliance to medication, assisting with feeding, bathing and dressing, collecting medication, etc.

Funds for this services is mainly for transportation costs and salaries for community health workers.



## ANNEXURE C

**Supported independent /assisted living**

This refers to the ongoing support in the form of individual or group supervision and instruction in basic skills of everyday living, which mentally ill persons receive in the community.

Supported or assisted living is a housing option providing social development programmes in order to encourage the independent functioning of people with disabilities and to facilitate deinstitutionalisation. This option could be community based or attached to a residential facility.

This could be where a mental health care user has access to a social worker, or care worker for assistance with some decision making, problem solving, etc. This could be that the user could live in a facility with minimal support and supervision, but within a protective environment.

**Protective workshops**

Protective workshops provides a protected environment outside of the open labour market, offering vocational services, e.g. vocational guidance, vocational training and selective placement, designed to secure and maintain suitable employment for mentally ill persons who cannot be integrated into the open labour market.

**These services are currently funded by the Department of Social Development**



### **Support groups**

Support groups provides invaluable emotional, spiritual, physical and psychological support to individuals and families. Benefits include having contact with others who are experiencing similar challenges in their lives, obtaining useful information and developing different ways of dealing with the demands of mental illness.

Support groups are useful for providing information and guidance regarding illness, gaining insight into one's self, networking and to access referral systems.

Support group provides a sense of belonging and enables the expression and sharing of feelings, as well as concerns. Most importantly, it provides and encourages a sense of hope and positive living. In follow up care, support group may promotes adherence to treatment.

Groups that meet to provide ongoing regular support for people with mental disorders. Through these groups, persons with mental illness are enabled to increase their functioning so that they can be successful and satisfied with living, working, socialising and learning environments of their choice with the least amount of professional intervention.

These groups are not only for group discussions, but can also be used as activity or social and recreation groups. It could also include advocacy and peer led or self-help groups.

**Support groups require initial and ongoing training of facilitators as well as funding for venue, refreshments and transport. The services should be supervised by the multi-disciplinary team from the district.**

## ANNEXURE C

**Residential Services:** Facilities that offer accommodation, housing or support in homes or facilities like board and care homes to persons with mental disabilities.

Component	Children with severe to profound intellectual disability (maximum 15 )	Adults with Severe to profound intellectual disability (maximum 15 )	Adults with Severe psychiatric disabilities (maximum 15 )
	<p>Maximum of 36 beds per unit, not more than 6 patients per room</p> <p>Facilities built in accordance to SABS standards.</p> <p>Minimum floor area of any user's room, must be 10m<sup>2</sup> and single rooms shall have a minimum wall length of 2.6m.</p> <p>Beds must be provided by daylight</p> <p>Clean utility room with minimum floor area of 5 m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Treatment room with minimum of 10m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Separate storage space for linen,</p>	<p>Maximum of 36 beds per unit, not more than 6 patients per room</p> <p>Facilities built in accordance to SABS standards.</p> <p>Minimum floor area of any user's room, must be 10m<sup>2</sup> and single rooms shall have a minimum wall length of 2.6m.</p> <p>Beds must be provided by daylight</p> <p>Clean utility room with minimum floor area of 5 m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Treatment room with minimum of 10m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Separate storage space for linen,</p>	<p>Maximum of 36 beds per unit, not more than 6 patients per room</p> <p>Facilities built in accordance to SABS standards.</p> <p>Minimum floor area of any user's room, must be 10m<sup>2</sup> and single rooms shall have a minimum wall length of 2.6m.</p> <p>Beds must be provided by daylight</p> <p>Clean utility room with minimum floor area of 5 m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Treatment room with minimum of 10m<sup>2</sup></p> <p>Separate storage space for linen,</p>



## ANNEXURE C

pharmaceuticals, equipment, user's belongings and food	pharmaceuticals, equipment, user's belongings and food	pharmaceuticals, equipment, user's belongings and food
Dirty utility room of 5-7m <sup>2</sup>	Dirty utility room of 5-7m <sup>2</sup>	Dirty utility room of 5-7m <sup>2</sup>
A soiled linen and waste room, could be part of dirty utility room, space should then be 9m <sup>2</sup>	A soiled linen and waste room, could be part of dirty utility room, space should then be 9m <sup>2</sup>	A soiled linen and waste room, could be part of dirty utility room, space should then be 9m <sup>2</sup>
Cleaners room containing shelves or low level sink. This could also be incorporated with the dirty utility room.	Cleaners room containing shelves or low level sink. This could also be incorporated with the dirty utility room.	Cleaners room containing shelves or low level sink. This could also be incorporated with the dirty utility room.
Staff toilet x1 for each 36 users, which contains hand wash basin.	Staff toilet x1 for each 36 users, which contains hand wash basin.	Staff toilet x1 for each 36 users, which contains hand wash basin.
10% of beds to be single rooms	10% of beds to be single rooms	10% of beds to be single rooms
Separate recreational and dining area to be provided (minimum of 10m <sup>2</sup> for 5 users, and 1 m <sup>2</sup> added for each additional 10 users	Separate recreational and dining area to be provided (minimum of 10m <sup>2</sup> for 5 users, and 1 m <sup>2</sup> added for each additional 10 users	Separate recreational and dining area to be provided (minimum of 10m <sup>2</sup> for 5 users, and 1 m <sup>2</sup> added for each additional 10 users
-separation between children and adults (eating, sleeping, bathing)	Special safety features i.r.o. electric plugs and switches, heaters, door locks and hot water supply	Special safety features i.r.o. electric plugs and switches, heaters, door locks and hot water supply
Direct vision of all beds from	A play area adjacent or visible,	A play area adjacent or visible,

## ANNEXURE C

	central work station or from adjacent corridor	and easily accessible from workstation	and easily accessible from workstation
	Special safety features i.r.o. electric plugs and switches, heaters, door locks and hot water supply A play area adjacent or visible, and easily accessible from workstation 1 Electrical socket outlet for every 3 beds	1 Electrical socket outlet for every 3 beds	1 Electrical socket outlet for every 3 beds

**Boarding House:**

A residential care facility where mentally ill people are regularly supplied with meals and lodging for pay.

**These users live independently and should be followed up at outpatients departments and make use of other day care services.**



## ANNEXURE D



Department:  
Health  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING  
CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES FOR PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR  
PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

**ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

IDENTIFYING PARTICULARS			
<b>NAME OF FACILITY:</b>			
<b>PHYSICAL AND POSTAL ADDRESS:</b>			
<b>NAME OF FACILITY MANAGER:</b>			
<b>CONTACT TEL. &amp; FAX</b>			
<b>DATE:</b>		<b>Nr. of MHCUs &lt; 18 [     ]</b>	<b>Nr. of MHCUs &gt; 18 [     ]</b>
<b>Licensed with Department of Health in terms of Section 43 of the Regulations to the Mental Health Care Act (Act 17 of 2002):</b>			<b>YES</b>
			<b>NO .....</b>

ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES FOR PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY			
Sub-Component	Elements	Yes	No Partial Comments
Exterior Environment	All way -findings signage in place		
	Display the board reflecting Facility name, physical address, contact details is visibly displayed at the entrance		
	The NPO Organogram with contact details of a facility manager is displayed on a central notice board.		
	All services in the facility are clearly signposted		
	There is a lockable gate		
1. Signage & Notices	There is staff/personnel managing the gate/ Bell		
	There is a perimeter fence / wall		
	Perimeter fence / wall is intact		
	The exterior is aesthetically pleasing and clean		
	Trees trimmed and grass is cut		
	Paving is free of weeds		
	Flower beds well-kept and free of weeds		



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

	The facility's premises clean (e.g. free from dirt & litter)					
	Exterior walls of the facility clean, no peeling paint, cracks on wall					
	Burglar doors and windows available					
	Designated smoking area / smoking restricted to certain sections / areas					
	There is emergency water supply in the facility					
	There is functional back-up electricity supply					
	The sewerage system is functional					
	Building entrance (stairs, ramps, disability access)					
	Availability of rails if entrance has stairs/ramps (not applicable if surface is flat)					
<b>Additional Comments</b>						
2. Leadership and Governance	<b>Sub-Component</b>	<b>Elements</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>	<b>Partial</b>	<b>Comments</b>
		Facility has a valid registration as an NPO from DSD available				
		Valid Licence in terms of Regulation 43 of MHC Act is available				
		Facility has a valid occupancy certificate				
		Facility has a certificate of acceptability for food handling				
		Facility has a health certificate				
		Monthly/quarterly facility reports on required indicators and outcomes				
		Records of quarterly audit by designated provincial officials are available				
		Facility has appointed facility manager				
		Availability of Board of directors (list of members) and designations				
		Is the board active – records of meeting minutes				
		Staff compliment available as per agreement				
		Job description for each individual person is available on personal file				
		Health professional staff are registered with the relevant statutory bodies				



**ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

	Incident reports are available				
	Availability of relevant policies, guidelines and SOP's				
	Complaints/compliments/suggestion boxes and procedures for the users and relatives are visibly placed in the facility				
	There is a functional facility based telephone/cellular phone (at reception /managers office)				
Additional comments					
3. Staff Identity & dress code	Prescribed dress code				
	All staff members comply with dress code				
	All staff members wear identification tag				
<b>Additional Comments</b>					
4. Staff Training	Duty roster / schedule of staff				
	Attendance registers for all staff available				
	Staff receive basic in-service training (records/ evidence )				
	Personnel indicate they have received training on the use of medical equipment within their scope of practice				
	Personnel indicate they receive training on procedures in the event of death of MHCUs				
	Personnel indicate they have knowledge of the facility's disaster management plan & their roles				
	Personnel have knowledge of dealing with disease outbreaks				
	All personnel have received training in first aid				
Additional comments					



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

Sub-Component	Elements	Yes	No	Partial	Comments
5. Records & Filing Room	Records / Filing Room available				
	There is a single record per user containing the following: personal details, original ID, family contact details, etc.				
	Health records are kept, archived, disposed, stored and retrieved according to the applicable legislation				
Additional comments					
6. Infection Prevention and Control(IPC)	All relevant staff wear appropriate protective clothing				
	Pest control measures are in place				
	Transmission precautions for communicable diseases is in place (cough, skin eruption / rash, etc...)				
	Linen in use is clean				
	The linen is appropriately used for its intended purpose				
	Waste is properly segregated				
	Waste is stored in access-controlled rooms/area				
	Waste is disposed off in line with SOP				
	Sharps are disposed of in impenetrable, tamperproof containers				
Additional comments	Cleaning material is available and stored appropriately				
	All service areas are clean				
7. Rest Rooms-toilets	Gender separated toilets				
	Toilet space is according to SABS standards				
	Functional toilet seat with a lid				



**ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY**

	All toilets are clean, intact and functional					
	Hand wash basin with cold and hot (must be thermostatically controlled) water					
	Soap and hand paper towels available					
	Toilet paper and hand soap available					
	Presence of / at least one toilet for persons with disabilities					
<b>Additional comments</b>						
<b>Sub-Component</b>	<b>Elements</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>No</b>	<b>Partial</b>	<b>Comments</b>	
8. Rest Rooms- bathrooms	There is constant supply of clean running water					
	Gender separated bathrooms					
	Availability of a shower / bath					
	Carpets or wooden skirting in ablution rooms					
	Availability of a shatterproof mirror in each bathroom					
<b>Additional comments</b>						
9. Food and Meals	Menu approved by a Nutritionist / a dietician					
	The menu for specific dietary needs, e.g. diabetic diet, hypertensive diet and etc. available					
	Meals served three times per day and an evening snack					
	Staff available to assist MHCUs during meal times					
	Food preparation area separate from dishwashing and garbage areas					
	Food handlers / catering staff wear relevant protective clothing					
	Carpets or wooden skirting in the kitchen					
	Kitchen next to the dining hall, if further away presence of a food trolley					
Relevant appliances available:						



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

	A fridge						
	A stove						
	A kettle						
	Cutlery and crockery						
	A rubbish bin						
	A microwave oven						
	General dining room facility available						
	Dining hall furniture available (table & chairs)						
<b>Additional comments</b>							
10. Rooms & Corridors	Corridors clean						
	Corridors have handrails along both sides						
	Ramps provided for in all accommodation and therapeutic areas						
	Adequate lighting provided for at entrances and ramps						
<b>Additional comments</b>							
Sub-Component	Elements	Yes	No	Partial	Comments		
11. Rooms & Corridors	Adequate lighting – must be provided in every room						
	Electrical-plumbing and mechanical fittings must be vandal-proof (all electricity wall sockets must be covered)						
	Rooms comply with minimum space requirements						
	Rooms - Temperature control mechanisms available - heater						
	Rooms – Temperature control mechanisms available - fan/ air-conditioner						
	Adequate ventilation is observed						
	Floors of all rooms and corridors are of concrete finish to a smooth washable surface or covered with washable material.						



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

<b>Additional comments</b>					
12. Bedrooms	Doors comply with SABS standards				
	Room contain more than 12 beds				
	Bed size – appropriate bed size and height				
	Each bed have a lockable bedside locker & a chair				
	Each MHCU has individual closet				
<b>Additional comments</b>					
13. Laundry Room	Laundry has relevant equipment;				
	A washing machine				
	A dryer				
	Iron				
	Iron board/surface				
	Carpet or wooden skirting in laundry room, cleaning utility room, soiled linen room				
Separation of clean , dirty and soiled linen					
<b>Additional comments</b>					
14. Recreational Area	Indoor recreational and leisure facilities available				
	Outdoor recreational and leisure facilities available				
	Family / visitors lounge with furniture (including reception area for the visitors) is available				
	Communal lounge available with the following;				
	A television set				
	A DVD player				
A music player					



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

<b>Additional comments</b>					
Sub-Component	Elements	Yes	No	Partial	Comments
15. Rehabilitation Programmes	Room with water and electricity available for execution of rehabilitation programme to accommodate total number of users				
	Activity plan available				
	Evidence of interventions available on user files				
	Tables and chairs adequate for number of users				
	Equipment and material available and stored appropriately				
<b>Additional comments</b>					
16. Treatment Room	90% of tracer medicines are available				
	Medicine expired				
	Expired medicine is disposed off according to prescribe procedures				
	Basic medical Equipment available:				
	Oxygen cylinder(fixed/portable)				
	Blood pressure monitor				
	Glucometer				
	Thermometer				
	Examination couch is available				
	Dressing trolley available				
	Emergency trolley is available				
	Treatment room allows for plugging of equipment, Basic surgical supplies (consumables) are available				
	Position of uninterrupted power supply is inaccessible for patients				
	Availability of First Aid Kit/Box				



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

<b>Additional Comments</b>					
17. Reproductive and Preventive health care service	MHCU have access to contraceptives or family planning services				
	MHCU have access to flu vaccines as per protocol				
	MHCU have access to Post Exposure Prophylaxis (PreP)				
<b>Additional Comments</b>					
18. Disaster Preparedness	Fire fighting equipment is available				
	Records of mock fire drills with users and staff				
	Emergency evacuation procedure is practiced annually				
	Smoke detection - detector should be linked to the reception				
	Emergency exits clearly marked				
<b>Additional comments</b>					
19. Records & Filing Room	Records / Filing Room available				
	There is a single record per user containing the following: personal details, original ID, family contact details etc.				
<b>Additional comments</b>					
Sub-Component	Elements	Yes	No	Partial	Comments
20. Records & Filing Room	Health records are kept, archived, disposed, stored and retrieved according to the applicable legislation				
<b>Additional comments</b>					
21. Referral system	There is up to date SOP for referral, transportation of MHCUs and emergency.				

ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

Additional comments	Copy of referral form used by the facility includes user's details, reason for referral or transfer, users health status, current medication, details of receiving official and name of receiving institution.				
	Personnel know how & when to call for an emergency user transport				
	Contact details for emergencies should be visible				

**COMPLETED BY PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT**

<b><u>FINDINGS</u></b>	<b><u>Compliant</u></b>	<b><u>Non-compliant</u></b>
<b><u>1. Rights of Mental Health Care Users</u></b>		
<b><u>2. Facilities and Infrastructure</u></b>		
<b><u>3. Clinical governance and clinical care</u></b>		
<b><u>4. Clinical support services</u></b>		
<b><u>5. Governance and Human resource</u></b>		



ASSESSMENT AND COMPLIANCE REPORT FOR RESIDENTIAL AND/OR DAY CARE FACILITIES PROVIDING CARE, TREATMENT AND REHABILITATION SERVICES  
FOR  
PERSONS WITH MENTAL ILLNESS AND/OR SEVERE OR PROFOUND INTELLECTUAL DISABILITY

Recommendations for remedial actions if non-compliant

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

NAME:

DESIGNATION:

SIGNATURE

DATE:

COMPLETED BY FACILITY REPRESENTATIVE

NAME:

DESIGNATION:

SIGNATURE

DATE:

Page 11 of 12



## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 219

16 MARCH 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994) AS AMENDED**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 Act No. 22 of 1994) as amended, that a claim for restitution of land rights has been lodged by Mr. Malesela Jerry Matloa on behalf of Mokopane Tribe with respect to the following farms namely: Macalacaskop 243 KR, Turfspruit 241 KR, and Portion 3 of the farm Tweefontein 238 KR, located in the Mogalakwena Local Municipality, Waterberg District, Limpopo.

PROPERTIES	LANDOWNERS	TITLE DEED NUMBERS	EXTENT IN HECTARES	ENDORSEMENTS	HOLDERS	CLAIMANTS
Farm Macalacaskop 243 KR	Republic of South Africa	T23991 / 1998	4280.5187	None		Malesela Jerry Matloa
Farm Turfspruit 241 KR	Republic of South Africa	T 23920/2000	3560.7463	None		Malesela Jerry Matloa
Portion 3 of the farm Tweefontein 238 KR	Republic of South Africa	T8608/1937	171.3064	None		Malesela Jerry Matloa

The Commission on Restitution of Land Rights, herein-after the Commission, received a land claim lodged by Mr. Malesela Jerry Matloa on behalf of Mokopane Tribe on the 31 March 1998. The Research Report with regard to this land claim was approved by the Regional Land Claims Commissioner. Any party that has an interest on the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit in writing, within **14 days** of publication of this notice, any comments or information or objection to the said notice under reference number KRP 11524 to:

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: Limpopo**

Private Bag X9552  
Polokwane  
0700

First Floor, 96 Kagiso House  
Corner Rissik & Schoeman Streets  
Polokwane  
0699

  
**LEBJANÉ MAPHUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER**  
DATE: 2018/04/16

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 220

16 MARCH 2018

## NOTICE IN TERMS OF SECTION 17(2) (c) OF THE LAND REFORM (LABOUR TENANTS)

## ACT NO.3 OF 1996

It is hereby given for general information that an application for the acquisition of land in terms of section 16(1) of the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act No.3 of 1996 has been lodged with the Director-General by the person/s listed in the schedule, in respect of the property listed in the schedule.

## SCHEDULE

***Applicant/s***

Number	Name	ID Number
1.	Phumzile Zideba and others	740908 6180 086
2.	Tokazi Elizabeth Sidepa	261230 0137 080
3.	Thamsanqa Lucky Zidepa	570612 5683 083

***Property***

Number	Property Description	District	Province
1	Groenfontein, Portion 1 of Groenfontein No.11 (commonly known as Woodlands)	Sarah Baartman	Eastern Cape

***Owner details***

Number	Name	ID Number/Registration Number
1	Bayeti Conservancy PTY LTD	200001025407

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 221

16 MARCH 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/2/E/25/0/0/45

CLAIMANT : Mr Vuyisile Hendrie Nyamakazi  
(On behalf of Fiver Community)

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION : Portion of Morosi B  
Welland farms portions 1&2

EXTENT OF LAND : 1134 hactares

TITLE DEED : Quitrent title

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Alfred Nzo

DATE SUBMITTED : 20/10/1998

CURRENT OWNER : Gelbert A. Brain

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape**  
**Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**  
**PO Box 1375**  
**East London**  
**5200**  
**Tel : 043 700 6000**  
**Fax : 043 743 3687**



**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 222

16 MARCH 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/2/D/83/0/0/5

CLAIMANT : P.J. Venter

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT OF LAND
Lot 180 – Groenendal Farm, Lady Frere	106.2913 Hectares
Lot 181 – Groenendal Annexe Farm, Lady Frere	105.4348 Hectares
Lot 212 – Grey's Pan Reserve Farm, Lady Frere	21.3719 Hectares

TITLE DEED : n/a

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Chris Hani

DATE SUBMITTED : 15 January 1997

CURRENT OWNER : Department of Rural Development

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape**  
**Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**  
**PO Box 1375**  
**East London**  
**5200**  
**Tel : 043 700 6000**  
**Fax : 043 743 3687**



**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**



## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 223

16 MARCH 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/3/D/51/797/1680/14

CLAIMANT : David Grebe

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT OF LAND	TITLE DEED	CURRENT OWNER
Erf 346, North End	673 sqm	19022/1972	Verwey Anna Sophia
Erf 5555, North End	287 sqm	T28446/90	Nelson Mandela Metro Municipality
Erf 5556, North End	960 sqm	T7375/1978	Pieter Jordan Trust

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Sarah Baartman

DATE SUBMITTED : 05/02/1997

CURRENT OWNER : Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape  
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**

**PO Box 1375**

**East London**

**5200**

**Tel : 043 700 6000**

**Fax : 043 743 3687**

  
**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 224

16 MARCH 2018

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT,  
1994 (ACT NO.22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No.22 of 1994 as amended) that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REFERENCE : 6/2/2/D/973/0/0/11

CLAIMANT : Wawa Boison Xhamlashe

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION : Portion of Garden Lot 121, Location no. 35 called  
All Saints, Engcobo

EXTENT OF LAND : 6343 m<sup>2</sup>

TITLE DEED : n/a

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY : Chris Hani

DATE SUBMITTED : 31/12/1998

CURRENT OWNER : Department of Roads and Transport

Has been submitted to the Regional Land Claims Commissioner and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of the Act in due course. Any person who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within sixty (60) days from the publication of this notice, any comments/information to

**Office of the Regional Land Claims Commissioner : Eastern Cape**  
**Department of Rural Development and Land Reform**  
**PO Box 1375**  
**East London**  
**5200**  
**Tel : 043 700 6000**  
**Fax : 043 743 3687**



**Mr. L.H. Maphutha**  
**Regional Land Claims Commissioner**

## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

NO. 225

16 MARCH 2018

GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994  
(ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)


Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11(1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994 as amended); that a claim for restitution of land rights on:

REF NO.	CLAIMANT	PROPERTY	PORTION	CURRENT LAND OWNER	BONDS /NO BONDS	DEED OF TRANSFER
P 0142	Makhosiwonke Osman Mthimunye	Brakfontein 399 JR (now Celtisdal Ext 20)	Portion 14	Heuwelsgig Estate Pty Ltd	None	T156587/2002
		Brakfontein 399 JR (now Heuweloor Ext 3)	Portion 44	ABSA Prop Development Pty Ltd		T45017/1986
		Brakfontein 399 JR	Portion 108 (RE)	Zotec Developments Pty Ltd		T28443/2004
		Brakfontein 399 JR	Portion 165	Nabuvax Pty Ltd		T50498/2013
P 0107	Ms. May Loraine Henderson	Brakfontein 399 JR (now Heuweloor Ext 2)	Portion 178	ABSA Prop Development Pty Ltd		T1577/1986
		Acsonville 784 JR	RE of Portion 0	Nabuvax Pty Ltd		T36503/2017
		Erasmusklouf Extension 3	Portion 0(RE) of Erf 190	Keiskamma	None	SS1171/1996
		Erasmusklouf Extension 3	Portion 0(RE) of Erf 489	Municipality Pretoria(now City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality)	None	T83414/1989
P 0141	Ms Mhlekaba Sarah Masango	Brakfontein 390 JR	Portion 94	Pyramid Freight PTY LTD		T18273/2013
		Louwlerdia Extension 25 Township	Erf 904	Shoprite Checkers PTY LTD		T107779/2000
		Louwlerdia Extension 25 Township	Erf 905	Shoprite Checkers PTY LTD		T107779/2000
		Zwartkoppies 364 JR	Portion 17 (RE)	Omphalos Inv PTY LTD	B81984/1991	T161317/2006
P 0158	Rev. Lehlhonolo Henrietta Montjane-Malete	Zwartkoppies 364 JR	Portion 19 (RE)	Omphalos Inv PTY LTD	B81442/1994 B50864/1998 B201558/2006 B31338/2008	T161315/2006
Z 0031	Mr. Kleinbooi Kabini and Mr. Bangani Stuurman Kabini	Nootgedacht 525 JR	Portion 92	Claassen Magdalena Elizabeth	None	T33394/1985
Z 0112	Mr. Sagane Isaac Mabena	Klein Zonder Hout 519 JR	Portion 17	Tes Trust	None	T148356/2006
Z 0256	Mr. Majoni Jacob Sibiya	Boschkop 543 JR	Portion 2	Beefcor Pty Ltd	B54695/2015 Absa Bank Ltd	T30883/2013
HH 003	Mr. Fuyelapi David Mngomezulu	Derdepoort 326 JR	Portion 28 (RE)	Mun Pretoria	None	T12316/195557

Z 0293	Mr. Thembisani Elias Skosana	Derdepoort 326 JR (Now Eersterust Ext 6 Township)	Portion 293 (Portion of portion 292)	City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality	None	T43979/1983 T39791/2001
		Kameelzynkaal 547 JR	Portion 36	Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk in Afrika-Noord Transvaal	None	T41899/1992
		Kameelzynkaal 547 JR	Portion 39 (RE)	Kameelkraal Trust	None	T33032/1995
		Kameelzynkaal 547 JR	Portion 60	Transnet Ltd	None	T68518/1995
<b>Interested Parties:</b> Land Claimant, the land beneficiaries, the current landowners and the City of Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality, the Kungwini Local Municipality.						

have been submitted to the office of the Regional Land Claim Commission. The Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will investigate the claim in terms of the provisions of Rule 5 of the Rules Regarding Procedure of Commission Established in terms of section 16 of Restitution of Land Rights Act as amended. Any interested party on the claim is hereby invited to submit, representations in terms of section 11A of the Restitution of Land Rights Act No. 22 of 1994 as amended within 90 (Ninety) working days from the publication date of this notice, any comments/information may be send to:

MR. L.H. MAPHUTHA  
The Regional Land Claims Commissioner  
Gauteng Province  
Private Bag X 03  
**ARCADIA**  
0007  
TEL: (012) 310-6500/6620  
FAX: (012) 323-2961

  
Mr. Solomon Maruma  
Deputy Director (IMU)  
Date: 08/03/2018



## GENERAL NOTICES • ALGEMENE KENNISGEWINGS

### ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT DEPARTMENT

#### NOTICE 126 OF 2018

#### COMPETITION TRIBUNAL

#### NOTIFICATION OF COMPLAINT REFERRAL

The Competition Tribunal gives notice in terms of Section 51(3) & (4) of the Competition Act 89 of 1998 as amended, that it received the complaint referrals listed below. The complaint(s) alleges that the respondent(s) engaged in a prohibited practice in contravention of the Competition Act 89 of 1998.

Case No.	Complainant	Respondent	Date received	Sections of the Act
CR277Feb18	Competition Commission	Waco Africa (Pty) Ltd	06/02/2018	4(1)(b)(i), 4(1)(b)(ii), 4(1)(b)(iii)
CRP285Feb18	H M Neethling	Wholesome Foods	09/02/2018	4(1)(a), 4(1)(b)(i), 4(1)(b)(ii), 8(d)(iv), 8(c)
CR280Feb18	Competition Commission	SA Airlink (Pty) Ltd	12/02/2018	8(c), 8(d)(iv)
CRP283Feb18	Cornelius Esau	George Link (Pty) Ltd	15/02/2018	4(1)(a)
CR294Feb18	Competition Commission	Media 24 Ltd	27/02/2018	4(1)(b)(i)
CR295Feb18	Competition Commission	Saint-Gobain Construction Products SA (Pty) Ltd	28/02/2018	4(1)(b)(i), 4(1)(b)(ii)

**The Chairperson  
Competition Tribunal**

**ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT DEPARTMENT****NOTICE 127 OF 2018****COMPETITION TRIBUNAL****NOTIFICATION OF DECISION TO APPROVE MERGER**

The Competition Tribunal gives notice in terms of rules 34(b)(ii) and 35(5)(b)(ii) of the "Rules for the conduct of proceedings in the Competition Tribunal" as published in Government Gazette No. 22025 of 01 February 2001 that it approved the following mergers:

Case No.	Acquiring Firm	Target Firm	Date of Order	Decision
LM227Nov17	Sanlam Life Insurance Ltd	ABSA Consultants and Actuaries (Pty) Ltd	07/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM254Dec17	DRDGOLD Ltd	Sibanye Gold Ltd, Trading as Sibanye-Stillwater	07/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM264Jan18	Evergreen Property Investments (Pty) Ltd	VDV Evergreen Holdings (Pty) Ltd	07/02/2018	Approved
LM229Nov17	Coreland Property Investment Company (Pty) Ltd	Vaal River Mining Business and others	16/02/2018	Approved
LM266Jan18	Mitsui and Co Ltd	ETC Group (Mauritius) Ltd	16/02/2018	Approved
LM267Jan18	Community Property Company (Pty) Ltd	Eyethu Orange Farm Mall	16/02/2018	Approved
LM124Aug17	Barnes Southern Palace Holdings (Pty) Ltd	Scaw South Africa (Pty) Ltd	19/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM019Apr17	Raubex (Pty) Ltd	Umso Construction (Pty) Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM024Apr17	WBHO Construction (Pty) Ltd	Fikile Construction (Pty) Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM069Jun17	Stefanutti Stocks (Pty) Ltd	TN Molefe Construction (Pty) Ltd; AXSYS Projects (Pty) Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions
LM195Oct17	Industrial Partnership Investments (Pty) Ltd	Kagiso Tiso Holdings (Pty) Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved
LM196Oct17	Total South Africa (Pty) Ltd	Gulfstream Energy (Pty) Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved
LM253Dec17	Southern Palace Group of Companies (Pty) Ltd	Murray and Robert Ltd	21/02/2018	Approved
LM265Jan18	Main Street 1511 (Pty) Ltd	Roosenekal Foods Investment Holdings	21/02/2018	Approved
LM271Feb18	Redefine (Pty) Ltd	Alexander Forbes Building	21/02/2018	Approved
LM218Oct17	SA Retail Properties (Pty) Ltd	Silver Crown Trading 27 (Pty) Ltd	01/03/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions

LM272Jan18	Main Street (Pty) Ltd	Phembani (Pty) Ltd	01/03/2018	Approved
LM274Feb18	Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa Ltd	Le-Sel Research (RF) (Pty) Ltd	01/03/2018	Approved
LM275Feb18	Datacentrix Holdings Limited	DG Store (SA) (Pty) Ltd	01/03/2018	Approved
IM100Jul17	Timrite (Pty) Ltd	The Mining Bag Division of Tufbag (Pty) Ltd	19/02/2018	Approved Subject to Conditions

**The Chairperson  
Competition Tribunal**

## DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR

## NOTICE 128 OF 2018

## NOTICE OF MARCH 2018

PLEASE FIND SET OUT BELOW A LIST OF BARGAINING COUNCILS THAT HAVE BEEN ACCREDITED BY THE CCMA IN TERMS OF THE PROVISIONS OF THE LABOUR RELATIONS ACT 66 OF 1995 (AS AMENDED) FOR CONCILIATION AND/ OR ARBITRATION AND/ OR INQUIRY BY ARBITRATOR, WITH THE TERMS OF ACCREDITATION ATTACHED FOR THE PERIOD 01 NOVEMBER 2017 TO THE 31 JUNE 2020.

**BARGAINING COUNCILS ACCREDITED TO CONDUCT CONCILIATION AND ARBITRATION,**  
**SUBJECT TO CONDITIONS WHERE APPLICABLE**  
**(RENEWAL OF ACCREDITATION)**

Name of Council	Accredited Functions
<b><u>PRIVATE SECTOR BARGAINING COUNCILS</u></b>	
<b>Building Bargaining Council (North and West Boland)</b>	Accredited for conciliations only from <b>01 January 2018</b> until <b>31 December 2018</b> on condition that the Collective Agreement is extended to non-parties.
<b>Bargaining Council for the New Tyre Manufacturing Industry</b>	Accredited for conciliations only from <b>01 December 2016</b> until <b>31 January 2022</b> on condition that the settlement rate is improved upon and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>Metal and Engineering Industries Bargaining Council</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 March 2018</b> until <b>30 April 2019</b> on condition that late awards are monitored, postponements are monitored and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been



	successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>Transnet Bargaining Council</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 February 2018</b> until <b>31 January 2019</b> on condition that late awards are monitored, there is equitable distribution of cases according to race and gender, monthly reports be submitted and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>Bargaining Council for the Furniture Manufacturing Industry of the Western Cape</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 April 2018</b> until <b>30 April 2019</b> on condition that the Collective Agreement is extended to non-parties and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b><u>PUBLIC SECTOR BARGAINING COUNCILS</u></b>	
<b>South African Local Government Bargaining Council</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 December 2017</b> until <b>30 November 2018</b> on condition that the number of late awards is monitored and improved upon, conciliations are heard within 30 days and that sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>Education Labour Relations Council</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 February 2018</b> until <b>31 January 2020</b> on condition that monthly reports are submitted, only accredited panellists are utilized for

	accredited matters, late awards are monitored and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
--	--

**BARGAINING COUNCILS ACCREDITED TO CONDUCT CONCILIATION AND ARBITRATION,**  
**SUBJECT TO CONDITIONS WHERE APPLICABLE**  
**(AMENDMENT OF ACCREDITATION)**

<b>Bargaining Council for the Food Retail, Restaurant, Catering and Allied Trades</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 January 2017</b> until <b>30 April 2018</b> on condition that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>National Bargaining Council for the Electrical Industry of South Africa</b>	Accredited for conciliations only from <b>01 December 2016</b> until <b>31 January 2022</b> on condition that the settlement rate is improved upon and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.
<b>Building Industry Bargaining Council (Cape of Good Hope)</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 September 2016</b> until <b>31 October 2019</b> on condition that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.

<b>Bargaining Council for the Meat Trade</b>	Accredited for conciliation and arbitration (including Inquiry by Arbitrator) from <b>01 July 2016</b> until <b>30 June 2020</b> on condition all sections 198 and 198A to 198C-matters are allocated to only those part-time Commissioners who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions.

## **TERMS OF ACCREDITATION FOR CONCILIATION, ARBITRATION AND INQUIRY BY ARBITRATOR**

### **1. SCOPE OF ACCREDITATION:**

Herewith categories of disputes for which Councils are eligible to apply for accreditation.

#### **COUNCILS ARE ACCREDITED TO PERFORM THE FOLLOWING DISPUTE RESOLUTIONS FUNCTIONS:**

Unfair dismissal disputes	- Section 191
Unfair Labour practice	- Section 191
Mutual Interest disputes	- Section 64
Interpretation of Collective Agreement disputes	- Section 24 (1)
Essential Services disputes	- Section 74
Pre-dismissal arbitrations	- Section 188A
Temporary Employment Service	- Section 198, 198A, 198B, 198C and 198D
Disputes about Interpretation and Application of Chapter 2	- Section 9

COUNCILS MAY NOT SEEK ACCREDITATION FOR THE FOLLOWING DISPUTE RESOLUTION FUNCTIONS REGARDING DISPUTES OVER THE FOLLOWING (see FOOTNOTE 11 of SECTION 51):

Organisational rights (sections 16, 21 and 22);

Collective Agreements where the agreement does not provide for a dispute resolution procedure or the procedure is inoperative or any party frustrates the resolution of disputes (section 24(2) to (5));

Agency shops and closed shops (section 24(6) and (7) and section 26(11);

Determinations made by the Minister in respect of proposals made by a Statutory Council (section 45);

The interpretation and application of Collective Agreements of a Council whose registration has been cancelled (section 61(5) to (8));

Demarcation of sectors and areas of Councils (section 62);

The Interpretation or application of Part C (Bargaining Councils), Part D (Bargaining Councils in the Public Service), Part E (Statutory Councils) and Part F (General Provisions concerning Councils) (Section 63);

Picketing (section 69(8) to 10);

Proposals which are the subject of joint-decision making in a workplace forum (section 86);

Disclosure of information to workplace forums (section 89);

Interpretation or Application of the provisions of Chapter 5 of the LRA which deals with workplace forums (section 94);

Enforcement of the Collective Agreements by Bargaining Councils (section 33A) and;

Enforcement of arbitration awards in terms of section 143. Only the Director of the CCMA, unless the power has been delegated to a CCMA Senior Commissioner may certify awards as if it were an order of the Labour Court;

Facilitating mass retrenchment disputes section 189(A).



## **2. POWERS OF ACCREDITATION:**

Only those persons who are accredited by the CCMA, or are part-time Commissioners appointed by the Governing Body of the Commission in the terms of section 117 (2) of the Labour Relations Act, may perform the accreditation functions of the council for the Council.

The following provisions of the LRA, as amended apply to Councils accredited for conciliation and arbitration:

- (a) For the purpose of this paragraph any reference in Part C of Chapter VII of the LRA to:
  - “Commission” must be read as a reference to the Council;
  - “Commissioner” must be read as a reference to a conciliator or arbitrator appointed by the Council.
  - “Director” must be read as a reference to the Secretary of the Council.
- (b) The provisions of the sections contained in Part C of Chapter VII (section 127(6)) of the LRA shall apply to the Council in the performance of its accredited functions subject to the Council’s Constitution and/or Collective Agreements. For the purpose of this sub-paragraph the following applies:
  - (i) The provisions of section 133 to 136;
  - (ii) The provisions of section 138 to 142, S142A, S143, S144 and S145;
  - (iii) The provisions of section 146 unless the Collective Agreement of the Council provides that the Arbitration Act, Act 42 of 1965 applies to any arbitration conducted under its accredited function and which Collective Agreement is binding on the parties to the disputes; and
  - (iv) The provisions of section 148.

## **3. EXTENSION OF ACCREDITATION:**

Despite the expiry of the period of accreditation as stated in the Certificate of Accreditation, the Council may continue to perform its accredited functions in respect of any dispute referred to it during the period of accreditation, but not yet resolved by the time the period expires, until the dispute is resolved either through conciliation or arbitration.

## **4. TRANSGRESSION OF TERMS OF ACCREDITATION:**

If the accredited Council fails to comply with the terms of accreditation, the Governing Body of the CCMA may revoke accreditation. In terms of section 130 of the LRA, as amended the Governing Body of the CCMA may withdraw accreditation after having given reasonable notice of withdrawal.

## **5. AMENDMENT OF ACCREDITATION:**

An Accredited Council may apply to the Governing Body of the CCMA in terms of section 129 of the LRA to amend its accreditation.

## DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR

## NOTICE 129 OF 2018

PLEASE FIND SET OUT BELOW A LIST OF PRIVATE AGENCIES THAT HAVE BEEN ACCREDITED BY THE CCMA IN TERMS OF THE PROVISIONS OF THE LABOUR RELATIONS ACT 66 OF 1995 (AS AMENDED) FOR CONCILIATION AND/ OR ARBITRATION AND/ OR INQUIRY BY ARBITRATOR, WITH THE TERMS OF ACCREDITATION ATTACHED FOR THE PERIOD 01 DECEMBER 2017 TO THE 30 NOVEMBER 2017.

**PRIVATE AGENCIES ACCREDITED TO CONDUCT CONCILIATIONS AND ARBITRATIONS SUBJECT TO CONDITIONS WHERE APPLICABLE**  
**(RENEWAL OF ACCREDITATION)**

Name of Agency	Accredited Functions
Tokiso Dispute Settlement (Pty) Ltd	To be accredited for con and arb (which includes Inquiry by arbitrator) from <b>1 December 2017</b> until <b>30 November 2018</b> on condition that the settlement rate is improved upon and that all sections 198 and 198A to 198C -matters must be allocated to panellists who have been successfully trained by the CCMA on section 198 and its insertions to ensure the Private Agency meets the standards of the CCMA.

**TERMS OF ACCREDITATION FOR CONCILIATION, ARBITRATION AND INQUIRY BY ARBITRATOR**

**1. SCOPE OF ACCREDITATION:**

Herewith categories of disputes for which Private Agencies are eligible to apply for accreditation.

**PRIVATE AGENCIES ARE ACCREDITED TO PERFORM THE FOLLOWING DISPUTE RESOLUTIONS FUNCTIONS:**

Unfair dismissal disputes	- Section 191
Unfair Labour practice	- Section 191
Mutual Interest disputes	- Section 64
Interpretation of Collective Agreement disputes	- Section 24 (1)
Essential Services disputes	- Section 74
Inquiry by Arbitrator	- Section 188A
Regulation of non-standard work	- Section 198, 198A, 198B, 198C and 198D
Disputes about Interpretation and	- Section 9
Application of Chapter 2	

PRIVATE AGENCIES MAY NOT SEEK ACCREDITATION FOR THE FOLLOWING DISPUTE RESOLUTION FUNCTIONS REGARDING DISPUTES OVER THE FOLLOWING (see FOOTNOTE 11 of SECTION 51):

Organisational rights (sections 16, 21 and 22);

Collective Agreements where the agreement does not provide for a dispute resolution procedure or the procedure is inoperative or any party frustrates the resolution of disputes (section 24(2) to (5));

Agency shops and closed shops (section 24(6) and (7) and section 26(11);

Determinations made by the Minister in respect of proposals made by a Statutory Council (section 45);

The interpretation and application of Collective Agreements of a Council whose registration has been cancelled (section 61(5) to (8));

Demarcation of sectors and areas of Councils (section 62);

The Interpretation or application of Part C (Bargaining Councils), Part D (Bargaining Councils in the Public Service), Part E (Statutory Councils) and Part F (General Provisions concerning Councils) (Section 63);

Picketing (section 69(8) to 10);

Proposals which are the subject of joint-decision making in a workplace forum (section 86);

Disclosure of information to workplace forums (section 89);

Interpretation or Application of the provisions of Chapter 5 of the LRA which deals with workplace forums (section 94);

Enforcement of the Collective Agreements by Bargaining Councils (section 33A) and;

Enforcement of arbitration awards in terms of section 143. Only the Director of the CCMA, unless the power has been delegated to a CCMA Senior Commissioner may certify awards as if it were an order of the Labour Court;

Facilitating mass retrenchment disputes section 189(A).

**2. POWERS OF ACCREDITATION:**

Only those persons who are accredited by the CCMA, or are part-time Commissioners appointed by the Governing Body of the Commission in the terms of section 117 (2) of the Labour Relations Act, may perform the accreditation functions of the Agency for the Private Agency.

The following provisions of the LRA, as amended apply to Private Agency accredited for conciliation and arbitration:

- (a) For the purpose of this paragraph any reference in Part C of Chapter VII of the LRA to:
  - “Commission” must be read as a reference to the Private Agency;
  - “Commissioner” must be read as a reference to a conciliator or arbitrator appointed by the Private Agency.
  - “Director” must be read as a reference to the CEO of the Private Agency
- (b) The provisions of the sections contained in Part C of Chapter VII (section 127(6)) of the LRA shall apply to the Private Agency in the performance of its accredited functions:
  - (i) The provisions of section 133 to 136;
  - (ii) The provisions of section 138 to 142, S143, S144 and S145;
  - (iii) The provisions of section 146
  - (iv) The provision of 148

### **3. EXTENSION OF ACCREDITATION:**

Despite the expiry of the period of accreditation as stated in the Certificate of Accreditation, the Private Agency may continue to perform its accredited functions in respect of any dispute referred to it during the period of accreditation, but not yet resolved by the time the period expires, until the dispute is resolved either through conciliation or arbitration.

### **4. TRANSGRESSION OF TERMS OF ACCREDITATION:**

If the accredited Private Agency fails to comply with the terms of accreditation, the Governing Body of the CCMA may revoke accreditation. In terms of section 130 of the LRA, as amended the Governing Body of the CCMA may withdraw accreditation after having given reasonable notice of withdrawal.

### **5. AMENDMENT OF ACCREDITATION:**

An Accredited Private Agencies may apply to the Governing Body of the CCMA in terms of section 129 of the LRA to amend its accreditation.



## DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

## NOTICE 130 OF 2018

SA COUNCIL FOR THE  
PROPERTY VALUERS PROFESSION

77 Kariba Street, Lynnwood Glen, PRETORIA 0081 • Tel: +27 12 348 8643 • Fax: +27 12 348 7528 • PO Box 114, MENLYN 0063  
info@sacpvp.co.za • [www.sacpvp.co.za](http://www.sacpvp.co.za)

INVITATION FOR NOMINATIONS TO SERVE ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN  
COUNCIL FOR THE PROPERTY VALUERS PROFESSION ("SACPVP")

In terms of the Property Valuers Profession Act, 2000 (Act No. 47 of 2000) (the Act) nominations are invited by the South African Council for the Property Valuers Profession (SACPVP). The current members' term of office ends on 30 June 2018. The commencement of the four year term of office for the new members will be determined by the Minister of Public Works.

1. The Council shall comprise ten (10) members appointed by the Minister of Public Works, taking into account the principle of transparency and representivity. Invitations for members' nomination to serve in the Council is in terms of section 3 of the Act.

- (a) This invitation for nominations is for two members of the public in terms of section 3(1)(c) of the Act.
- (b) Invitation for nomination of six SACPVP registered persons (excluding candidates) in terms of section 3(1)(a) of the Act will be directed to SACPVP registered persons and its recognised voluntary associations and published on the SACPVP website.
- (c) Invitation for nomination of two professionals in the service of the State nominated by any sphere of government of whom at least one must be nominated by the national department responsible for public works will be directed to national departments with valuation sections or directorates.

2. The person being nominated should preferably be members of an organised grouping and have knowledge and experience in property, management, law, education and training, finance, human resources or corporate governance.

3. A nomination shall:

- (a) be in writing;
- (b) state the name of the person being nominated (hereinafter referred to as "the nominee");
- (c) state that the nomination is being made in terms of Section 3 (1) (c) of the Act;
- (d) state –
  - (i) the name of the person making the nomination (hereinafter referred to as "the nominator"); and
  - (ii) the nominator's ID number, postal, business, residential and e-mail addresses, as well as his or her telephone and facsimile numbers;
- (e) be signed by the nominator or executive member of the organised group;
- (f) be countersigned by the nominee to denote his or her acceptance of the nomination;
- (g) be accompanied by the nominee's –
  - (i) relevant and brief curriculum vitae (maximum 3 pages), also stating his or her ID number, postal address, business, residential and e-mail addresses, as well as his or her telephone and facsimile numbers; and
  - (ii) signed declaration to the effect that he or she is not disqualified from membership in terms of Section 6(1) of the Act, as detailed hereunder.

4. All nominations should be submitted by hand or post within 60 days from the date of the invitation referred to in Section 4(1) of the Act. It remains the responsibility of the nominee and the nominator that the nomination reaches SACPVP offices before the closing date. SACPVP will not be responsible for any delays in delivery of the nominations. No faxed or e-mailed nominations are discouraged as delivery and receipt thereof cannot be guaranteed by SACPVP.

Written nominations should be addressed to: **Attention:** Mr. Matsobane Seota

**Postal:** The Registrar, SA Council for the Property Valuers Profession, P.O. Box 114, Menlyn, 0063.

**Business address:** 77 Kariba Street, Lynnwood Glen, 0081. (Tel) 012 348 8643

**Closing date:** 16 May 2018 at 15:00. No late submissions will be accepted.

A Nomination form can be downloaded from the Council's website: [www.sacpvp.co.za](http://www.sacpvp.co.za). Please note that this is a re-advertisement and nominations previously sent must reapply.

5. Disqualification of members

Section 6(1) of the Act provides that persons who are not RSA citizens and are not resident in the Republic, unrehabilitated insolvents, persons convicted of serious offences (excluding political offences), persons found guilty of improper conduct and persons removed from an office of trust, are not qualified to serve as a Member of the Council.

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM  
NOTICE 131 OF 2018**

**GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994) that a claim for the restitution of land rights on the following properties have been lodged with the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: KwaZulu-Natal and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will further investigate the claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course:

<b>Property</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Magisterial District</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>Durban Metro</b>
<b>Administrative District</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>KwaZulu-Natal</b>
<b>Claimant</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Date claim lodged</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Reference number</b>	<b>:</b>	<b>see attached schedule</b>

Any party/parties who have an interest in the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit, within **30 days** from the date of publication of this notice, any representations and/ or information which shall assist the Commissioner in proving or disproving this claim.

Should no information and/ or representations from the affected party/ parties be forthcoming within the stipulated period, the affected party/parties shall be *ipso facto* barred from further doing so and the Commission shall continue with the subsequent processes towards completion of the investigation.

Any comments and information should be submitted to:

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner: KwaZulu-Natal  
Private Bag X9120  
Pietermaritzburg 3200

Tel: (033) 355 - 8400  
Fax: (033) 342 - 3409

Submissions may also be delivered to Second Floor, African Life Building, 200 Church Street, Pietermaritzburg.

**LEBJANE MAPHUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER: KWAZULU NATAL**  
**DATE:**

## SCHEDULE

NO.	REFERENCE/NUMBER	NAME OF CLAIMANT	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	DATE OF LODGEMENT
1	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/505	Bonginkosi Isaac Khumalo	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 15 New Clare	24-07-1996
2	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/792	Wilani Mildred Duma	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 4 Mjafethe	14-06-1996
3	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/979	Eunice Ethel Maphanga obo Lilly Mthimkhulu	Those portions only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 80 Chateau Estate and 105 Chateau Estate	13-06-1996
4	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1093	Nomusa Irene Sokhela	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 96 Mnyasana	09-04-1996
5	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1189	Elsie Lesetla-Mzinyane	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 168 Benoni	15-07-1996
6	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1273	Dalingelebo Goodman Nijiyela	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 53 Ezimbuzini	11-07-1996
7	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1482	Nunu Cecilia Mnganyi obo Tembe Mangope	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 148 KwaMnguni	13-06-1996
8	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1645	Mphikwa Arthur Sithole	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 153 Neddleton Road	28-12-1997
9	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/1722	Gladus Ntshiza	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as Booth Road	14-03-1996
10	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/2139	Duduzile Edith Ndlovu obo Zamekile Gertrude Nxumalo	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 7 Dunbar Road	22-07-1996
11	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/2212	Mqaqamba Wellington Zondi	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 114 New Clare	29-08-1996
12	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/2222	Vusumuzi Moffat Zuma	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 63 Mathonsi	24-07-1996
13	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/2745	Rogers Sipho Mthiyane obo Edna Muthwa	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 112 Ridgeview	10-07-1997
14	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/3040	Sayinile Duduzile Maphumulo	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 158 New Look	02-05-1997
15	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/3066	Bhekithemba Winnet Gasa	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 130 Mjafethe	15-10-1997
16	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/3789	Phyllis Gamede	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 24 Mgenge	03-07-1996
17	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/4293	Dondoza Bonginkosi Nxele	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 193 Dabulamanzi	07-12-1998
18	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/4301	Ernest Jabulani Zwane	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 129 Road 18 Chesterville	11-12-1998
19	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/4412	Duduzile Doris Mabaso	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 66 Dabulamanzi	31-12-1998
20	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/4604	Muntu David Nzama	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 81 Banki Road	30-12-1998
21	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/4625	Fikile Phyllis Kubheka	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 31 Dunbar Road	30-12-1998
22	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/5067	Octavia Mana Shale (Manzuza)	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 26 Madlebe	29-12-1998
23	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/5270	Bekabona Phidelis Mtolo	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 146 Two Sticks	31-12-1998
24	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/5368	Gladys Tanana Luthuli	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 50 Two Sticks	30-12-1998
25	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/5583	Pretty Khanyile	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 103 Mokoena	29-12-1998
26	KRN6/2/3/E/8/8/17/2716/5633	Njabulo Zuma	That portion only of Cato Manor, commonly known as 39 KwaMnguni	03-12-1997

**DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM****NOTICE 132 OF 2018****GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994  
(ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)**

Notice is hereby given that by virtue of an court order dated 12 June 2017 granted by the Land Claims Court of South Africa in Case number LCC 76/2009, the properties described in the schedule attached to this notice are with effect from date of the order no longer subject to any land claims by the claimants whose claims were adjudicated by the court under the said case numbers and all the properties listed in the schedule attached hereto are since 12 June 2017 no longer be subject to the notices in terms of which the claims were published in the Notice 880 of 2007, published in the Government Gazette No 30074 dated 20 July 2007

<b>Property</b>	:	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Extent of property</b>	:	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Magisterial District</b>	:	<b>Estcourt</b>
<b>Administrative District</b>	:	<b>KwaZulu-Natal</b>
<b>Current Title Deed No.</b>	:	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Current Owner</b>	:	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Bonds &amp; Restrictive Conditions (Interdicts)</b>	:	<b>see attached schedule</b>
<b>Claimant</b>	:	<b>Herman Mntambo on behalf of the EmaNtanjani Community</b>
<b>Date claim lodged</b>	:	<b>31 December 1998</b>
<b>Reference number</b>	:	<b>KRN6/2/2/E/10/0/0/51</b>

Any party who has an interest in the above-mentioned land is hereby invited to submit, within 30 days from the publication of this notice any comments/information to:

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner: KwaZulu-Natal  
Private Bag X9120  
Pietermaritzburg 3200

Tel: (033) 355 - 8400  
Fax: (033) 342 - 3409

Submissions may also be delivered to Second Floor, African Life Building, 200 Church Street, Pietermaritzburg.

**MR HARRY LEBJANE MAPHUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER**  
**DATE:**



## SCHEDULE

NO.	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT	CURRENT TITLE DEED NO.	CURRENT OWNER	BONDS & RESTRICTIVE CONDITIONS (INTERDICTS)
1	Remainder of Portion 3 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	202, 3474 ha	T52948/2002	Broadview Farm cc	B22080/2004 B31425/2002 K71/2003s
2	Portion 5 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	329, 5940 ha	T64311/2000	Mahabanyana Farms cc	K1325/1989s
3	Remainder of Portion 6 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	61, 7592 ha	T19050/1995	Ian Price Tarr	B21660/1996 B21661/1996
4	Portion 7 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	76, 3440 ha	T6802/1998	Reddy Family Trust-Trustees	B22591/2003 K617/1968s
5	Portion 9 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	272, 2297 ha	T33726/1998	Maqanda Alpheus Ndlovu	VA3137/2002
6	Portion 17 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	16, 9092 ha	T15993/2002	Jennifer Furniss	B10185/2002
7	Portion 18 of the farm Varkens Fontein No. 1138	21, 5091 ha	T3644/1997	Reddy Family Trust-Trustees	B22591/2003 K23/1968s
8	Remainder of Portion 1 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	370, 7708 ha	T58617/2002	Estate Farming Properties cc	K1164/1989s
9	Portion 2 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	623, 1380 ha	T10068/1982	David Neil Wood	K178/1990s
10	Remainder of Portion 3 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	211, 8971 ha	T16491/1994	Fredrick Probart Vickers	B6141/2005
11	Remainder of Portion 5 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	95, 1012 ha	T27123/1984	Leopold Rudi Putz	B8075/1988
12	Portion 5 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	168, 5744 ha	T36526/1993	Mohamed Azam Khan	B53255/1993
13	Portion 6 of Portion 1 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	163, 5474 ha	T58617/2002	Estate Farming Properties cc	None
14	Portion 8 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	52, 6092 ha	T41256/1999	Waldo Edwin Bosse	B94/2004
15	Portion 11 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	323, 7488 ha	T10099/2005	Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	K2546/2001s K940/1989s
16	Portion 12 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	60,1 7029 ha	T13045/2000	Aveleda Trust-Trustees	B8305/2000
17	Portion 15 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	309, 0005 ha	T10099/2005	Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	K2546/2001s K940/1989s

NO.	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT	CURRENT TITLE DEED NO.	CURRENT OWNER	BONDS & RESTRICTIVE CONDITIONS (INTERDICTS)
18	Portion 19 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	49, 6646 ha	T41256/1999	Waldo Edwin Bosse	B94/2004
19	Portion 23 of the farm Doorn Spruit No. 1163	212, 6850 ha	T12381/199	Fredrick Probat Vickers	B614/2005
20	Remainder of Portion 3 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	266, 9278 ha	T43463/2005	Elizabeth Wilson Bruce	K1197/1990s K143/2001s K353/1991s
21	Remainder of Portion 4 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	101, 2275 ha	T17883/2001	Mapi Patrick Madondo and Thandiwe Madondo	K1291/1989s
22	Remainder of Portion 6 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	283, 2802 ha	T20747/1970	Ivan Edwin Warden	K871/1990s K96/2001s
23	Remainder of Portion 7 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	404, 6860 ha	T6277/1978	Graham Hutton Atkinson	I-866/1977LG EX547/1985-28/11/85-9277/78T
24	Portion 8 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	202, 3430 ha	T7562/1982	Markus Marthinus Labuschagne	B22116/1984 B25669/1984 B27650/1983 B28423/1991 B31385/2004 B5119/1982 K2972/2004s
25	Portion 9 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	263, 1846 ha	T17883/2001	Mapi Patrick Madondo and Thandiwe Madondo	B10672/2001
26	Portion 10 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	263, 5483 ha	T21404/2001	Roland Ivan Driemeyer	B32197/2003 B40816/2005 K2766/2000s K318/1990s
27	Remainder of Portion 11 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	121, 4058 ha	T20747/1970	Ivan Edwin Warden	K871/1990s K96/2001s
28	Remainder of Portion 12 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	62, 9040 ha	T17883/2001	Mapi Patrick Madondo and Thandiwe Madondo	B10672/2001
29	Remainder of Portion 13 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	218, 4531 ha	T20747/1970	Ivan Edwin Warden	K871/1990s K96/2001s

NO.	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT	CURRENT TITLE DEED NO.	CURRENT OWNER	BONDS & RESTRICTIVE CONDITIONS (INTERDICTS)
30	Portion 14 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	98, 9703 ha	T17883/2001	Mapi Patrick Madondo and Thandiwe Madondo	B10672/2001
31	Portion 28 of the farm Kop Leegte No. 1154	65, 7655 ha	T16727/2002	Fredrick Probart Vickers	B6141/2005
32	Portion 2 of the farm Doornkop No. 837	397, 5697 ha	T70684/2002	Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	None
33	Portion 6 of the farm Doornkop No. 837	220, 1864 ha	T66910/2002	Viking Pony Properties 267 (Pty) Ltd	B39683/2002
34	Remainder of Portion 1 of the farm Hillgrove No. 2056	352, 9128 ha	T13483/1996	Hugo Ernst Walter Bosse	B23322/1996
35	Portion 5 of the farm Hillgrove No. 2056	249, 8886 ha	T9942/1987	George Philip Horner	None
36	Remainder of the farm B43 Winterton Settlement No. 11546	100, 2518 ha	T20747/1970	Ivan Edwin Warden	EX564/1985-20/12/85-20747/70T
37	Portion 1 of the farm B43 Winterton Settlement No. 11546	13, 9455 ha	T9543/1994	Neville George Reeve	B13913/1994
38	Remainder of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	181, 0748 ha	T52948/2002	Broadview Farm cc	B22080/2004 B31425/2002
39	Portion 1 of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	2, 0234 ha	T1963/1951	Colenso Farmers Assoc	None
40	Portion 3 of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	0, 0001 ha	T3517/1960	Republic of South Africa	none
41	Portion 4 of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	0, 4214 ha	T265/1961 T69212/2002	Province of Kwazulu-Natal	None
42	Portion 6 of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	2, 3802 ha	T5621/1962	Colenso Farmers Assoc	256/1962s
43	Portion 9 of the farm Lot 10 Varkens Fontein No. 10219	5, 0958 ha	T39732/1994	Hermanus Bernardus Swarts and Adri Swarts	B18832/2002 B48693/1994
44	Remainder of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	322, 3829 ha	T23292/1988	Hugo Ernst Walter Bosse	None
45	Remainder of Portion 1 of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	66, 7643 ha	T23292/1988	Hugo Ernst Walter Bosse	None
46	Portion 2 of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	80, 9372 ha	T23292/1988	Hugo Ernst Walter Bosse	None
47	Portion 4 of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	102, 7927 ha	T70684/2002	Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	None
48	Portion 8 of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	584, 9294 ha	T30969/1989 T70684/2002	Barry-John Thompson Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	None
49	Portion 9 of the farm Haase Fontein No. 1228	170, 7243 ha	T9478/2003	Arioch Properties (Pty) Ltd	None

NO.	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	EXTENT	CURRENT TITLE DEED NO.	CURRENT OWNER	BONDS & RESTRICTIVE CONDITIONS (INTERDICTS)
50	Remainder of Portion 5 of the farm Chieveley No. 2094	162, 1062 ha		Not Registered	
51	Remainder of Portion 8 of the farm Chieveley No. 2094	7, 7247 ha	T3708/1998	Siponono Zephania Mbatha	None
52	Remainder of Portion 10 of the farm Chieveley No. 2094	330, 4413 ha	T23292/1988	Hugo Ernst Walter Bosse	None
53	Portion 14 of Portion 5 of the farm Chieveley No. 2094	162, 1062 ha	T66910/2002	Viking Pony Properties 267 (Pty) Ltd	B39683/2002
54	Remainder of Portion 16 of Portion 5 of the farm Chieveley No. 2094	161, 0109 ha	T66909/2002	Viking Pony Properties 267 (Pty) Ltd	B39683/2002
55	The farm No. 17818	330, 0175 ha	T37929/2005	Viking Pony Properties 267 (Pty) Ltd	B39683/2002
56	The farm Lot Z Winterton Settlement No. 13671	229, 3912 ha	T13738/1984	Craig Bruce Schiever	B11936/1984 B6880/1999
57	The farm Lot A 42 Winterton Settlement No. 12829	57, 0454 ha	T16300/1997	Craig Schiever Family Trust- Trustees	B12076/2001 T4320/1938RM
58	The farm Bon Joy No. 15456	60, 7301 ha	T24579/2003	Broadview Farm cc	None



## DEPARTMENT OF RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND LAND REFORM

## NOTICE 133 OF 2018

## GENERAL NOTICE IN TERMS SECTION 11 (1) OF THE RESTITUTION OF LAND RIGHTS ACT, 1994 (ACT NO. 22 OF 1994)

Notice is hereby given in terms of Section 11 (1) of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act No. 22 of 1994) that a claim for the restitution of land rights on the following properties have been lodged with the Regional Land Claims Commissioner: KwaZulu-Natal and that the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights will further investigate the claim in terms of provisions of the Act in due course:

<b>Property</b>	:	1. Lot 1 of New Hanover No. 10076 2. Lot 2 of New Hanover No. 10076
<b>Extent of property</b>	:	1. 1, 2379 ha 2. 0, 9722 ha
<b>Magisterial District</b>	:	New Hanover
<b>Administrative District</b>	:	KwaZulu-Natal
<b>Previous Title Deed No.</b>	:	T21853/1982
<b>Current Title Deed No.</b>	:	T21853/1982
<b>Current Owner</b>	:	Erich Wilhelm Rencken
<b>Bonds &amp; Restrictive Conditions (Interdicts)</b>	:	I-3607/1982LG
<b>Claimant</b>	:	Haripithree Padayachee on behalf of the Padayachee Family
<b>Date claim lodged</b>	:	26 April 1996
<b>Reference number</b>	:	KRN6/2/2/E/30/0/0/52

Any party/parties who have an interest in the above-mentioned properties is hereby invited to submit, within **30 days** from the date of publication of this notice, any representations and/ or information which shall assist the Commissioner in proving or disproving this claim.

Should no information and/ or representations from the affected party/ parties be forthcoming within the stipulated period, the affected party/parties shall be *ipso facto* barred from further doing so and the Commission shall continue with the subsequent processes towards completion of the investigation.

Any comments and information should be submitted to:

The Regional Land Claims Commissioner: KwaZulu-Natal  
Private Bag X9120  
Pietermaritzburg 3200

Tel: (033) 355 - 8400  
Fax: (033) 342 - 3409

Submissions may also be delivered to Second Floor, African Life Building, 200 Church Street, Pietermaritzburg.

**LEBJANE MAPHUTHA**  
**REGIONAL LAND CLAIMS COMMISSIONER: KWAZULU NATAL**  
**DATE:**

## DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

NOTICE 134 OF 2018

**REQUEST FOR PROPOSALS****THE KWAZULU - NATAL DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT  
CALL FOR FUNDING APPLICATIONS (PROPOSAL)  
TO RENDER SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT SERVICES IN THE PROVINCE  
FOR 36 MONTHS**

Funding applications are invited for non- profit and other qualifying organizations to render Youth and Women Developmental Services on behalf of the Department.

**Eligibility Criteria**

- Be registered in terms of the NPO Act 71 of 1997
- The above mentioned registration must be current and proof of validity must be included in the funding application (i.e. de-registration organization will automatically be disqualified);
- If the proposal relates to a specialized service, the organization must additionally be registered in terms of the applicable legislative requirements;
- Proven track record of rendering social welfare services within RSA;
- Clear targets, outputs and outcomes must be reflected in funding applications, which must be aligned to the Annual Performance Plan of the Department;
- Funding application must further include audited or certified financial statements of the applicant organization in respect of the previous financial year;
- Funding applications must include indication by the applicant organization of its internal monitoring and evaluation mechanisms and specifically declare its willingness to adhere to the Departments timelines for reporting on results;
- Funding should be applied for programme in its totality, irrespective of geographic boundaries;

- Funding applicants will be considered by an appraisal panel in line with the Standard Operating Procedures for Transfer Payments.
- **A compulsory briefing session for each call for proposal/ programme will be held separately as follows:**

Date: 29 March 2018

Venue: Department of Social Development  
Valley View Secure Care Centre  
178 Clare Road  
Sydenham  
Durban

Time: 10:00

**Failure to attend the briefing Session will result in a proposal being disqualified.**

All proposal must be submitted in the tender box at the following address listed below by 12 noon on the 13 April 2018.

<b>Place:</b>	<b>Office:</b>
<i>Pietermaritzburg</i>	<i>Department of Social Development 208 Hoosen Hafeejee Ground Floor PMB 3200</i>
<i>Enquiries</i>	<i>Mr. NP Mavuso 033 264 2170 071 400 7877</i>

## DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

## NOTICE 135 OF 2018

STANDARDS ACT, 2008  
STANDARDS MATTERS

In terms of the Standards Act, 2008 (Act No. 8 of 2008), the Board of the South African Bureau of Standards has acted in regard to standards in the manner set out in the Schedules to this notice.

## SECTION A: DRAFTS FOR COMMENTS

The following draft standards are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South Africa National standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title, scope and purport	Closing Date
SANS 60335-2-23:2018 Ed 4	<i>Household and similar electrical appliances - Safety Part 2-23: Particular requirements for appliances for skin or hair care.</i> Deals with the safety of electric appliances for the care of skin or hair of persons or animals and intended for household and similar purposes, their rated voltage being not more than 250 V	2018-04-10

## SCHEDULE A.1: AMENDMENT OF EXISTING STANDARDS

The following draft amendments are hereby issued for public comments in compliance with the norm for the development of the South African National Standards in terms of section 23(2)(a) (ii) of the Standards Act.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Scope of amendment	Closing Date

## SCHEDULE A.2: WITHDRAWAL OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following published standards are issued for comments with regard to the intention by the South African Bureau of Standards to withdrawn them.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

## SCHEDULE A.3: WITHDRAWAL OF INFORMATIVE AND NORMATIVE DOCUMENTS

In terms of section 24(5) of the Standards Act, the following documents are being considered for withdrawal.

Draft Standard No. and Edition	Title	Reason for withdrawal	Closing Date

## SECTION B: ISSUING OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS

## SCHEDULE B.1: NEW STANDARDS

The following standards have been issued in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 60826:2018 Ed 1	<i>Overhead transmission lines - Design criteria.</i> Specifies the loading and strength requirements of overhead lines derived from reliability-based design principles.
SANS 16961:2018 Ed 1	<i>Petroleum, petrochemical and natural gas industries - Internal coating and lining of steel storage tanks.</i> Specifies the minimum requirements on underground and aboveground storage tanks for surface preparation, materials, application, inspection and testing of internal coating lining systems that are intended to be applied on internal surfaces of steel storage tanks of crude oil, hydrocarbons and water for corrosion protection.
SANS 50167:2018 Ed. 1	<i>Personal eye-protection - Optical test methods.</i> Specifies optical test methods for eye-protectors, the requirements for which are contained in other ENs.



Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 909:2018 Ed 1	<i>Pet food - Nutritional and manufacturing requirements.</i> Specifies nutritional requirements for commercially prepared pet food, complementary and complete, for dogs and cats.
SANS 19:2018 Ed 2	<i>The inspection, testing and examination of mobile cranes.</i> Covers provisions for the inspection, testing and examination of mobile cranes in use.
SANS 465:2018 Ed 2	<i>Standard specification for Denatured Fuel Ethanol for blending with gasolines for use as Automotive spark-ignition Engine fuel.</i> Specifies requirements and test methods for marketed and delivered fuel ethanol to be used as a blending component for automotive fuel for spark ignition engines, excluding aviation applications, in accordance with the requirements of SANS 1598.
SANS 13485:2018 Ed 2	<i>Medical devices - Quality management systems - Requirements for regulatory purposes.</i> Specifies requirements for a quality management system where an organization needs to demonstrate its ability to provide medical devices and related services that consistently meet customer and applicable regulatory requirements.
SANS 62561-5:2018 Ed 2	<i>Lightning protection system components (LPSC) Part 5: Requirements for earth electrode inspection housings and earth electrode seals.</i> Specifies the requirements and tests for earth electrode inspection housings (earth housing) installed in the earth and for earth electrode seals.

**SCHEDULE B.2: AMENDMENT/AMENDED STANDARDS**

The following standards have been amended in terms of section 24(1)(a) of the Standards Act.

Standard No. and year	Title, scope and purport
SANS 273:2018 Ed 1.1	<i>The design, manufacture, maintenance and safe operation of chairlifts in mines. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.1.</i> Amended to update referenced standards.
SANS10354:2018 Ed 2.1	<i>The safe application of underground railway driven and non-driven wheel sets. Consolidated edition incorporating amendment No.1.</i> Amended to update referenced standards.

**SCHEDULE B.3: WITHDRAWN STANDARDS**

In terms of section 24(1)(C) of the Standards Act, the following standards have been withdrawn.

Standard No. and year	Title

**SCHEDULE B.4: ESTABLISHMENT OR DISBANDMENT OF TECHNICAL COMMITTEES**

In terms of section 4(2) (l) the South African Bureau of Standards has established/disbanded the following technical committees:

Technical Committee No.:	Title	Scope

If your organization is interested in participating in these committees, please send an e-mail to [Dsscomments@sabs.co.za](mailto:Dsscomments@sabs.co.za) for more information.

**SCHEDULE 5: ADDRESSES OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF STANDARDS OFFICES**

The addresses of offices of the South African Bureau of Standards where copies of the standards mentioned in this notice can be obtained, are as follows:

1. Gauteng Head Office, 1 Dr Lategan Road, Groenkloof, Private Bag X191, Pretoria 0001.
2. Western Cape Regional Office, SABS, Liesbeek Park Way, Rosebank, PO Box 615, Rondebosch 7701.
3. Eastern Cape Regional Office, SABS, 30 Kipling Road, cor. Diaz and Kipling Roads, Port Elizabeth, PO Box 3013, North End 6056.
4. KwaZulu-Natal Regional Office, SABS, 15 Garth Road, Waterfall Park, Durban, PO Box 30087, Mayville 4058.

**DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY**  
**NOTICE 136 OF 2018**  
**INTERNATIONAL TRADE ADMINISTRATION COMMISSION**  
**CUSTOMS TARIFF APPLICATIONS**  
**LIST 02/2018**

The International Trade Administration Commission (herein after referred to as ITAC or the Commission) has received the following applications concerning the Customs Tariff. Any objection to or comments on these representations should be submitted to the Chief Commissioner, ITAC, Private Bag X753, Pretoria, 0001. Attention is drawn to the fact that the rate of duty mentioned in these applications is that requested by the applicants and that the Commission may, depending on its findings, recommend a lower or higher rate of duty.

**CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION**

*The submission of confidential information to the Commission in connection with customs tariff applications is governed by section 3 of the Tariff Investigations Regulations, which regulations can be found on ITAC's website at <http://www.itac.org.za/documents/R.397.pdf>. These regulations require that if any information is considered to be confidential, then a non-confidential version of the information must be submitted, simultaneously with the confidential version. In submitting a non-confidential version the regulations are strictly applicable and require parties to indicate:*

- ☐ *Each instance where confidential information has been omitted and the reasons for confidentiality;*
- ☐ *A summary of the confidential information which permits other interested parties a reasonable understanding of the substance of the confidential information; and*
- ☐ *In exceptional cases, where information is not susceptible to summary, reasons must be submitted to this effect.*

*This rule applies to all parties and to all correspondence with and submissions to the Commission, which unless clearly indicated to be confidential, will be made available to other interested parties.*

*The Commission will disregard any information indicated to be confidential that is not accompanied by a proper non-confidential summary or the aforementioned reasons. If a party considers that any document of another party, on which that party is submitting representations, does not comply with the above rules and that such deficiency affects that party's ability to make meaningful representations, the details of the deficiency and the reasons why that party's rights are so affected must be submitted to the commission in writing forthwith (and at the latest 14 days prior to the date on which that party's submission is due).*

*Failure to do so timeously will seriously hamper the proper administration of the investigation, and such party will not be able to subsequently claim an inability to make meaningful representations on the basis of the failure of such other party to meet the requirements.*

**1. EXEMPTION OF SAFEGUARD DUTIES APPLICABLE ON HOT-ROLLED STEEL PRODUCTS IMPORTED UNDER REBATE ITEM 470.03 AND DRAWBACK ITEM 521.00, FOR USE IN THE MANUFACTURE, PROCESSING, FINISHING, EQUIPPING, OR PACKING OF GOODS EXCLUSIVELY FOR EXPORT**

**APPLICANTS:**

**Robor (Pty) Ltd**  
233 Barbara Road  
Elandsfontein  
Ekurhuleni  
1429

and

**GasCon, a division of Southey Holdings (Pty) Ltd**  
Consani Business Park  
Elsies River  
Cape Town  
7490

**Enquiries:** ITAC Ref: **13/2017**, Enquires: Mr. Pfarelo Phaswana and/or Mr. Njabulo Mahlalela,  
Tel: 012 394 3628/3684 or email: [pphaswana@itac.org.za](mailto:pphaswana@itac.org.za)/[nmahlalela@itac.org.za](mailto:nmahlalela@itac.org.za)

**REASONS FOR THE APPLICATION:**

- The safeguard duty that was recently imposed on the subject products is negatively affecting the competitiveness of the downstream steel industry manufacturing products for the export market; and
- The safeguard duty renders business uneconomical for the export-oriented firms and may result in job losses.

**PUBLICATION PERIOD:**

Written submissions should be made within **four (4) weeks** of the date of this notice.

## 2. REDUCTION IN THE RATE OF DUTY ON:

Ethylene-alpha-olefin copolymers, having a specific gravity of less than 0.94 [*Commonly known as Linear Low Density Polyethylene (LLDPE)*], classifiable in tariff subheading 3901.40 from 10% *ad valorem* to free of duty with retrospective effect from the date of submission of this application, being 6 December 2017.

### APPLICANT:

**West African Group**  
**A Division of West African International (Pty) Ltd**  
P O Box 181083,  
Dalbridge  
4014

[Ref no: 27/2017, Enquiries: Email: Ms. Elizabeth Kekana, Fax: (012) 394 4668, email: [ekekana@itac.org.za](mailto:ekekana@itac.org.za), and Mr Nkulana Phenya, Fax: (012) 394-4677; Email: [nphenya@itac.org.za](mailto:nphenya@itac.org.za).]

### REASON FOR THE APPLICATION:

As a reason for the application, the applicant indicated, among others, the following:  
*"The subject product imported under the tariff heading 3901.40 currently attracts a 10% duty, whereas previously the same product was imported duty free. The local producer of these products only has the capacity to supply 47% of the market, leaving a large portion of the market reliant on imported material. A change in the rate of duty currently payable by the importers to 10% of the subject product will have a severe impact on the country's trade deficit and balance of payments."*

### PUBLICATION PERIOD:

Representation should be submitted to ITAC within **two (2) weeks** of the date of this notice.



### 3. INCREASE IN THE RATE OF DUTY ON AND CREATION OF A TEMPORARY REBATE PROVISION FOR:

- Coated paper and paper board classifiable under tariff subheading 4810.92.90, from free of duty to 5 per cent *ad valorem*; and
- Temporary rebate of full duty on-

“Other paper and paperboard, coated on one or both sides with kaolin (China clay) or other inorganic substances, with or without a binder, and with no other coating, whether or not surface-coloured, surface-decorated or printed, in rolls or rectangular (including square) sheets, of any size, multi-ply paper and paper board classifiable in tariff subheading 4810.92.90, containing less than 50 per cent by mass of pulps of fibres derived from recovered (waste and scrap) paper or paperboard or of other fibrous cellulosic material classifiable in tariff heading 47.06, in such quantities at such times and subject to such conditions as the International Trade Administration Commission may allow by specific permit provided the Commission is satisfied that the products are not available in the SACU region”.

*[Note: On 22 September 2017 the applicant's request for an increase in the rate of duty was published in the Government Gazette No. 41132 for comments. In the course of the preliminary investigation, the Commission decided to also consider the possibility that if an increase in the rate of duty on the abovementioned products were recommended, that a temporary rebate provision, as set out above, be considered subject to an ITAC permit. Draft guidelines are attached for comment.]*

#### APPLICANT:

**Mpact Operations (Pty) Ltd t/a Mpact Paper – Springs Mill**  
82-84 Steel Road  
New Era  
Springs  
1559

**Enquiries:** ITAC Ref: 03/2017, Enquiries: Ms. M Masithela, Mr. O Madito and Mr. J Mtinkulu, Tel: (012) 394 3682/3692/3691 or Email: [mmasithela@itac.org.za](mailto:mmasithela@itac.org.za)/  
[omadito@itac.org.za](mailto:omadito@itac.org.za)/ [jmtinkulu@itac.org.za](mailto:jmtinkulu@itac.org.za)

**REASONS AS STATED BY THE APPLICANT FOR AN INCREASE IN THE RATE OF DUTY ON COATED PAPER AND PAPER BOARD:**

The applicant submitted that the requested increase in the customs duty is needed to:

- a) Stimulate further development of the SACU paper manufacturing sector and the associated industry/sector pipeline;
- b) Compensate industry for certain competitive disadvantages it experiences;
- c) Level the playing field vis-à-vis duties protection in the exporter countries by aligning the SACU import tariffs on subject product/s to levels that are justifiable and comparable to those in competing/similar economies;
- d) Provide a small but critically important “buffer” against increasingly rapid fluctuations of market conditions in the global economy; and foreign exchange fluctuations influencing the local economy; and
- e) Protect SACU producers’ capacity and market share in the domestic market to provide an effective and stable base market to support local manufacturing and substantial on-going investment to ensure industry sustainability.

**PUBLICATION PERIOD:**

Representation should be submitted within **four (4) weeks** from the date of this notice.

**DRAFT GUIDELINES, RULES AND CONDITIONS PERTAINING TO:**

**Other paper and paperboard, coated on one or both sides with kaolin (china clay) or other inorganic substances, with or without a binder, and with no other coating, whether or not surface-coloured, surface-decorated or printed, in rolls or rectangular (including square) sheets, of any size, multi-ply paper and paper board classifiable in tariff subheading 4810.92.90, containing less than 50 per cent by mass of pulps of fibres derived from recovered (waste and scrap) paper or paperboard or of other fibrous cellulosic material classifiable in tariff heading 47.06.**

Interested parties are hereby notified that all applications submitted for permits in terms of rebate item ..... will be dealt with according to the guidelines as described in this notice and must be submitted in the format as set out in the application forms where applicable. For the convenience of all interested parties, the following guidelines in respect of the above mentioned rebate item subject to publication are attached to this notice. The application forms related to the rebate item mentioned above are obtainable from ITAC's website at [www.itac.org.za](http://www.itac.org.za) and from ITAC, Block E: thedti Campus, 77 Meintjies Street, Sunnyside, Pretoria.

**Note: In terms of section 26 (4) of the International Trade Administration Act, 71 of 2002, the Commission may, *inter alia*, require an applicant to provide additional information in respect of the application. The conditions attached to and the information requested below reflects the minimum requirements, which ITAC would apply to evaluate an application under this rebate provision.**

1. Applicants must register with South African Revenue Service (SARS) as users of this rebate provision, and they must acquaint themselves with the requirements of SARS.
2. Applications for permits must be addressed to the International Trade Administration Commission (ITAC), Private Bag X 753, Pretoria 0002 or delivered by hand to the DTI Campus, (Block E), 77 Meintjies Street, Sunnyside, Pretoria, 0002.
3. Applications for permits must be submitted according to the requirements as set out in the attached application form. If the space provided in the application form is insufficient, please complete additional pages using the format of the application form to submit the requested information.
4. Qualifying products under rebate item ..... are as follows:
  - **Other paper and paperboard, coated on one or both sides with kaolin (china clay) or other inorganic substances, with or without a binder, and with no other coating, whether or not surface-coloured, surface-decorated or printed, in rolls or rectangular (including square) sheets, of any size, multi-ply paper and paper board classifiable in tariff subheading 4810.92.90, containing less than 50 per cent by mass of pulps of fibres derived from recovered (waste and scrap) paper or paperboard or of other fibrous cellulosic material classifiable in tariff heading 47.06**
5. If all the information requested in the application form is not submitted, the application will be deemed deficient. The application will not be considered, and it will be returned to the applicant.

6. At least fourteen (14) days should be allowed for the processing of applications and the issue of permits, provided that all necessary information which renders the application duly completed has been submitted to ITAC.
7. Each rebate permit issued defines the period during which the goods concerned can be cleared under the rebate item. The rebate permit will only be valid for a period of twelve (12) months, commencing from the date on which the permit is issued. The permit may be issued for a shorter period as requested by the applicant, or as decided upon by ITAC.
8. If an applicant intends to apply for a subsequent permit for which the period of validity should commence on the day after the expiry date of the permit issued in terms of paragraph 7, this must be clearly indicated in a new application. The application must be submitted to ITAC two weeks prior to the expiry date of the previous permit as permits cannot be issued with retrospective effect.
9. Rebate permits issued will be subject to the following conditions:
  - 9.1. Permits will only be issued after it has been established that the SACU paper and paperboard production cannot meet the demand for paper and paper board, classifiable in tariff subheading 4810.92.90 and containing less than 50 per cent by mass of pulps of fibres derived from recovered (waste and scrap) paper or paperboard or of other fibrous cellulosic material classifiable in tariff heading 47.06, by downstream users of paper and paper board based products.
  - 9.2. The applicant(s) must first consult with industry associations (PAMSA etc.) and known local manufacturers of paper and paper board (Mpact Operations (Pty) Ltd t/a Mpact Paper). Additionally, a sample of the product to be imported should also be provided to these parties. The relevant stakeholders should then provide confirmation with regard to the extent of local availability of the paper and paperboard to be imported under rebate.
  - 9.3. The application must be accompanied by a the letter referred to in paragraph 9.2, with a date not older than 30 days from the date of the application, as proof that the SACU manufacturer(s) cannot supply the product in question.
  - 9.4. Should, after receipt of the SACU paper and paperboard manufacture(s) response, or in absence of such, information be available that the downstream users of paper and paperboard based products are unable to source the required quantity of paper and paper board classifiable in tariff subheading 4810.92.90, containing less than 50 per cent by mass of pulps of fibres derived from recovered (waste and scrap) paper or paperboard or of other fibrous cellulosic material classifiable in tariff heading 47.06, the quantity of the product in question required should be submitted by the applicant for ease of verification purposes by ITAC. ITAC may issue a permit with or despite the required agreement within the SACU paper and paperboard manufacture(s).
  - 9.5. The applicant must provide a formal letter on the applicant's business letter head confirming that the applicant complies with labour laws, regulations and agreements gazetted by the Minister of Labour.



- 9.6. The applicant must submit a SARS PIN to enable ITAC to verify the Applicant's tax clearance status on the SARS Tax Clearance System. Should challenges exist in providing this information, give detailed reason/s for the absence thereof. Thereafter, applicants will be requested to submit a valid tax clearance certificate.
- 9.7. The applicant must submit a letter of consent agreeing to transparency in that the following information may be shared with industry and government stakeholders [PAMSA, Mpact Operations (Pty) Ltd and the Department of Trade and Industry (thedti) (Agro-processing directorate) etc.]. The stakeholders should treat the following data supplied, as confidential and should not release it to a third party:
- Name of applicant;
  - Contact details of applicant;
  - Technical description of paper and paperboard; and
  - Volume applied for.
- 9.8. In the event that the applicant's request to import the required paper and paperboard is not supported, the applicant should consult with the relevant dti sector desk (Agro-processing directorate). Thedti directorate will thereafter provide proposals in this regard.
- 9.9. Firm commitments in the form of signed contracts and/or proof of purchasing (i.e. purchase orders) of locally manufactured fabrics must be included in the application to ITAC.
- 9.10. As a rebate provision is considered for the purpose of providing relief to domestic users that may experience injurious import pressures against similar imported end products, the benefit of the rebate provision will be tied to conditions related to economic performance over time and may be reviewed after a specified period. Reciprocity commitments as set out in the application form must be addressed in each application submitted.
- 9.11. The applicant must commit, *inter alia*, to the creation of employment and provide in each permit the number of jobs it expects to create annually as a result of the rebate permit granted. The applicant must submit to ITAC an annual report on its job creation performance.
- 9.12. Rebate permits may not be transferred in any manner by the holder thereof to any other person, or be used to the benefit of any person, not named in the permits.
- 9.13. Permits in relation to this rebate provision should be applied for and received before the goods concerned are shipped.
- 9.14. Any request for an amendment to a rebate permit must be forwarded to ITAC for consideration. Amendments will only be considered in the following instances:
- a) Error by ITAC on permit;

- b) Error by applicant regarding the product description or tariff subheading. This will only be processed if the request is accompanied by a confirmation from SARS in this regard.
- 9.15. Should any party misplace a permit, the applicant should submit an affidavit on a company letterhead endorsed by a Commissioner of Oath, stating that the permit was lost and the circumstances surrounding loss of such permit. ITAC may, on the facts furnished, exercise its discretion to issue a new permit that replaces the lost permit. Should the lost permit be found the applicant must return such permit to ITAC.
- 9.16. Extension of the period for which the permit is valid may be granted. Extensions will only be granted where the relevant permit has not expired, and in the view of ITAC, good cause warrants extension of such permit. Such discretion shall lie solely with ITAC. Extensions will only be permitted for a period up to 3 months and the party applying for the extension must submit a letter and supporting documents to ITAC, furnishing reasons and good cause for the extension.
- 9.17. The permits are issued at the discretion of ITAC. Should the application be rejected; the applicant will be informed in writing of the decision and the reasons therefore.

**Non-compliance to the conditions of permits:**

10. If a *prima facie* case is established that any condition of a permit issued, in terms of this rebate provision, has not been complied with, the consignment in terms of which the rebate was used can be seized by ITAC and the rebate permit temporarily suspended while ITAC conducts an investigation. If it is established that non-compliance occurred, appropriate steps will be taken. These steps will be taken in terms of the International Trade Administration Act, Act 71 of 2002 and the Customs and Excise Act of 1964 that can include, criminal charges, withdrawal of the permit or permits concerned and/or the rejection of future applications for permits.

**DEPARTMENT OF TRADITIONAL AFFAIRS  
NOTICE 137 OF 2018**

**NOTICE OF INTENDED INTRODUCTION IN PARLIAMENT OF THE  
CUSTOMARY INITIATION BILL, 2018**  
*(Published in accordance with Rule 241 of the Rules of the National Assembly)*

In accordance with Rule 241(1)(b) of the Rules of the National Assembly of the Parliament of the Republic of South Africa, notice is hereby given that the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs intends to introduce the Customary Initiation Bill, 2018 in the National Assembly.

In accordance with Rule 241(1)(c) of the said Rules, kindly be informed that this Bill seeks to provide for the effective regulation of customary initiation practices. The main objectives of the Bill are—

- (a) to protect, promote and regulate initiation;
- (b) to provide acceptable norms and standards with a view to ensure that initiation takes place in a controlled and safe environment; and
- (c) to provide for the protection of life and the prevention of any abuse.

The Bill consists of five chapters:

- (a) Chapter 1 deals with matters relating to interpretation (definitions); application; objectives; prohibitions; and guiding principles.
- (b) Chapter 2 deals with oversight and coordinating structures. Provision is made for a National Initiation Oversight Committee (NIOC) and Provincial Initiation Coordinating Committees (PICCs).
- (c) Chapter 3 deals with the responsibilities, roles and functions of key role-players, including government, traditional leaders and houses of traditional leaders.
- (d) Chapter 4 deals with governance aspects relating to initiation schools and includes provisions relating to consent, prohibitions, age and circumcision.
- (e) Chapter 5 deals with general matters such as offences, appeals, regulations, monitoring, provincial peculiarities and interim arrangements.

Electronic copies of the Bill and the Memorandum on the Objects of the Bill can be obtained from [RinaldiB@cogta.gov.za](mailto:RinaldiB@cogta.gov.za), [TrishaR@cogta.gov.za](mailto:TrishaR@cogta.gov.za) or [Danie@cogta.gov.za](mailto:Danie@cogta.gov.za).

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

## NOTICE 138 OF 2018

**INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE ACT, (ACT NO.60 OF 1993)  
GRANT /AMENDMENT OF INTERNATIONAL AIR SERVICE LICENSE**

Pursuant to the provisions of section 17 (12) of Act No.60 of 1993 and Regulation 15 (1) and 15 (2) of the International Air Regulations, 1994, it is hereby notified for general information that the applications, detail of which appear in the Schedules hereto, will be considered by the International Air Services Council (Council) representation in accordance with section 16(3) of the Act No. 60 of 1993 and regulation 25(1) of International Air Services Regulation, 1994, against or in favour of an application, should reach the Chairman of the International Air Services Council at Department of Transport, Private Bag X 193, Pretoria, 0001, within 28 days of the publication hereof. It must be stated whether the party or parties making such representation is / are prepared to be represent or represented at the possible hearing of the application.

**APPENDIX II**

(A) Full name, surname and trade name of the applicant. (B) Full business or residential address of the applicant. (C) Class of licence applied for. (D) Type of International Air Service to which application pertains. (E) Category or kind of aircraft to which application pertains. (F) Airport from and the airport to which flights will be undertaken. (G) Area to be served. (H) Frequency of flight

**(A) SA Airways SOC Ltd; SA Airways.** (B) Airways Park, Room 110A, Jones Street, OR Tambo International Airport. (C) Class I & II; I/S094 & I/n095. (D) Type S1, S2, N1, N2, N3 & N4. (E) Category A1 & A2. (F) OR Tambo, Cape Town & Durban International Airports. **Changes to the Management Plan:** Mr Vuyani Jarana is appointed as the Chief Executive Officer.

**(A) SA Airlink (Pty) Ltd; Airlink.** (B) #3 Greenstone Hill Office Park, Emerald Boulevard, Greenstone Hill, Modderfontein, 1609. (C) Class II; I/N074. (D) Type N1 & N2. (E) Category A1. (F) OR Tambo International Airport (G) & (H) **Adding the following:** North America, North Africa, South America, Asia, Europe & Oceania.

**This publication rectifies errors and omissions contained in the publication that was published in the General Notice 70 of 2018 and in the Government Gazette No 41445 of February 16, 2018.**



## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

## NOTICE 139 OF 2018

**AIR SERVICE LICENSING ACT, 1990 (ACT NO.115 OF 1990)  
APPLICATION FOR THE GRANT OR AMENDMENT OF DOMESTIC AIR  
SERVICE LICENCE**

Pursuant to the provisions of section 15 (1) (b) of Act No. 115 of 1990 and Regulation 8 of the Domestic Air Regulations, 1991, it is hereby notified for general information that the application detail of which appear in the appendix, will be considered by the Air Service Licensing Council. Representation in accordance with section 15 (3) of the Act No.115 of 1990 in support of, or in position, an application, should reach the Air Service Licensing Council. Private Box X 193, Pretoria, 0001, within 21 days of date of the publication thereof.

**APPENDIX I**

(A) Full name and trade name of the applicant. (B) Full business or residential address of the applicant. (C) Class of licence applied for. (D) Type of air service to which application applies. (E) Category of aircraft to which application applies.

(A) **Endangered Wildlife Trust.** (B) Pinelands Office Park, Building K2, Ardeer Road, Modderfontein, Johannesburg, 1609. (C) Class III. (D) Type G3, G4, G10 & G16 (RPAS operations). (E) Category H1.

**APPENDIX II**

(A) Full Name and trade name of the applicant. (B) Full business or residential address the applicant. (C) The Class and number of license in respect of which the amendment is sought (D) Type of air service and the amendment thereto which is being applied for (E) Category of aircraft and the amendment thereto which is being applied for. (F) Amendment referred to in section 14(2) (b) to I.

(A) **Bannerama Sky Media (Pty) Ltd.** (B) Hangar 12, Virginia Airport, Durban North, Kwazulu Natal, 4-51. (C) Class II & III; N587D & G588D. (D) Type N1, N2, G2, G3, G4, G5, G7, G8, G10, G15 & G16 (Powerline Inspection & Offshore Operations) (E) Category H1 & H2. **Changes to the Management Plan:** Samuel (Titi) Kekana replaces Brian Katz as the Chief Executive Officer & Accountable Manager, Christo Putter replaces Darryll Talbot as the Air Service Safety Officer, Phil Scott replaces Brian Katz as the RP: Aircraft & Luveen Raghunandan replaces Brian Katz as the RP: Flight Operations.

(A) **Chopper Worx (Pty) Ltd; Chopper Worx.** (B) 221 London Lane, Knopjeslaagte, 385 – JR, Centurion, 0157. (C) Class II & III; N825D & G826D. (D) Type N1, N2, G2, G3, G4, G5, G7, G8, G10-, G15 & G16 (Power Line Maintenance / Flipping / Offshore Operations). (E) Category H1 & H2. **Changes to the Management Plan:** G Rossouw is appointed as the Chief Executive Officer, G Taylor as the RP: Flight Operations, M Van Aswegen as the RP: Aircraft & R Wolfe as the Air Service Safety Officer.

(A) **Vula Aviation Technologies (Pty) Ltd; Vula Air.** (B) 24B Tenth Street, Meiville, Johannesburg, Gauteng, 2092. (C) Class III; G1330D. (D) Type G16 RPAS Commercial Operations). (E) Category A4, H1 & H2. **Adding type G2, G3, G4, G5, G7, G8, G10, G12 & G13.**

---

**BOARD NOTICES • RAADSKENNISGEWINGS**

---

**BOARD NOTICE 38 OF 2018****AGRICLTURAL PRODUCE AGENTS ACT,1992****(ACT NO 12 OF 1992)****UNCLAIMED MONIES PAYBLE TO PRINCIPALS OF FRESH PRODUCE AGENTS**

In terms of Section 21(1) of the Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act No. 12 of 1992) notice is hereby given of unclaimed monies specified in the Schedule, that have been paid to the Registrar of the Agricultural Produce Agents Council in terms of Section 21(2) of the Act.

Any person who is of the opinion that he/she is entitled to an indicated amount shall claim it within 90 days from the date of publication of this notice by means of a statement, duly sworn and confirmed to the Registrar, Agricultural Produce Agents Council, Suite 69, Private Bag X9, East rand, 1462, and in which the following particulars are furnished:

- a) The full name and address of claimant;
- b) The names of the fresh produce agent concerned;
- c) The amount claimed and quantity of produce for which it is claimed; and
- d) The date on which and the address at which the produce concerned were delivered.



L Pretorius

**REGISTRAR: AGRICLTURAL PRODUCE AGENTS COUNCIL**



## Agricultural Produce Agents Council

## Unclaimed monies details list

Reporting month:  
Period reflected:

February 2018  
2017-09-01 to 2018-02-28

Agency	Producer (Surname and Initials)	Sum of Balance
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Eurogold Trading	R 1,112.19
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Sadiki T.M	R 50.03
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Mofarm	R 13.36
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Eurogold Trading CC	R 1,734.22
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Molefe M.N	R 101.47
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Khurula V	R 1,227.08
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Tisken V	R 25.26
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Matunyeng	R 6,763.07
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Tivani Fresh	R 670.61
Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency	Khanya Family Trust	R 8,976.56
<b>Botha Roodt Johannesburg Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R 20,673.85</b>
Citifresh Market Agency	Malatji Maria	R 167.80
Citifresh Market Agency	Mathowe Alex	R 65.80
Citifresh Market Agency	Sambo Alfred	R 22.85
<b>Citifresh Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R 256.45</b>
CL de Villiers Market Agents	T.Munyai	R 85.87
CL de Villiers Market Agents	S.L.Nethavhani	R 254.25
<b>CL de Villiers Market Agents Total</b>		<b>R 340.12</b>
DW Fresh Jhb Market Agency	Phumelrila Farming	R 327.03
DW Fresh Jhb Market Agency	Selmak	R 307.35
<b>DW Fresh Jhb Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R 634.38</b>
Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency	Greenpak	R 138.10
Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency	Netshivhazwaula	R 1,308.03
Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency	Phohumbz Trading	R 103.89
Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency	Mukwvho P	R 240.46
Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency	Manavhela N.S	R 150.72
<b>Egoly Johannesburg Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R 1,941.20</b>
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	De Jager I.i	R 288.93
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Mbedzi	R 177.23
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Monyela P	R 1,140.58
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Valour Fresh Produce	R 505.02
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Mbedzi K.P	R 545.92
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Welcome	R 3,920.66
Egoly Tshwane Market Agency	Van Deventer	R 2,404.11
<b>Egoly Tshwane Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R 8,982.45</b>
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Shongani E.M	R 208.05
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Hlongwani S.A	R 74.06
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Nekhumbe M.g	R 333.88
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mvanalo M.A	R 58.83
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Phadziri M	R 98.99
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Kwinda A.P	R 69.32
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Rakhimani M.S	R 356.07
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Nuleaf	R 1,109.46
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Shikwambaba B	R 3,750.03
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Makhesha T.A	R 523.27
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Malovhele A.P	R 3,634.45
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Matimolane N.G	R -

**CONTINUES ON PAGE 258 - PART 3**





# Government Gazette Staatskoerant

REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA  
REPUBLIEK VAN SUID AFRIKA

Vol. 633

16 March  
Maart 2018

No. 41498

**PART 3 OF 3**

N.B. The Government Printing Works will not be held responsible for the quality of "Hard Copies" or "Electronic Files" submitted for publication purposes

ISSN 1682-5843



**AIDS HELPLINE: 0800-0123-22 Prevention is the cure**

Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Moila M.J	R	922.68
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Alrode fruit and veg	R	1,569.59
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Budeli M.B	R	329.15
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mkhabele M.M	R	2,493.38
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Sadiki T.M	R	500.47
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Johannes Theron	R	715.02
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mabuze M.M	R	195.13
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mawasha B.M	R	2,163.16
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Frans Sekgota	R	368.76
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Masias R.P	R	287.95
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mathebula O	R	105.98
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Nekhumbe T.A	R	149.66
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Kwinda T.A	R	77.86
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Nekhumbe N P	R	211.52
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Tshivula p t	R	533.84
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Ngwana T A	R	397.79
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Mukwevho T M	R	296.45
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Tshautshau AA	R	2,907.58
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Kwinda A P	R	165.14
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Sibara N E	R	305.58
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Netsianda V H	R	272.64
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Nefolovhodwe M F	R	202.07
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Rabothata M	R	247.95
Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency	Tshatangano M	R	212.27
<b>Exec-U-Fruit Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>25,848.03</b>
Farmers Trust Market Agents	Nkuna T	R	249.13
Farmers Trust Market Agents	Mavula MR ENT cc	R	1,425.43
Farmers Trust Market Agents	Guluve Farm	R	466.14
Farmers Trust Market Agents	Silebepe	R	482.93
<b>Farmers Trust Market Agents Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>2,623.63</b>
Garfield Market Agency	Angelo	R	1,877.72
Garfield Market Agency	DuPreez A. Lan	R	23.52
Garfield Market Agency	Diepkuil Boerdery	R	-
Garfield Market Agency	Vulimehlo Majak	R	305.41
<b>Garfield Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>2,206.65</b>
Hanly Market Agency	Mfeka Stembiso	R	268.28
<b>Hanly Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>268.28</b>
Marco Market Agency	Nefolovhodwe M	R	110.18
Marco Market Agency	Nethavhani T.S	R	102.66
Marco Market Agency	MSFP PRODUCE	R	418.72
Marco Market Agency	Doc Wins	R	3,682.28
Marco Market Agency	Ndou T.C	R	44.97
Marco Market Agency	Mufhali F.C	R	289.70
Marco Market Agency	Rabothata H.S	R	7.80
Marco Market Agency	Mamphodo A.M	R	41.03
Marco Market Agency	Mathebula S.N	R	368.52
Marco Market Agency	Van der Berg	R	1,772.82
Marco Market Agency	Fresh Horticulture	R	3,522.14
Marco Market Agency	Urban Fresh	R	5,877.54
Marco Market Agency	Penzorh	R	725.43
Marco Market Agency	Producxe hub	R	4,695.83
Marco Market Agency	Tharaga H.M	R	135.09
<b>Marco Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>21,794.71</b>
Metro Market Agency	Mugodo R.O	R	32.45
Metro Market Agency	Manavhela N.S	R	177.28
<b>Metro Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>209.73</b>

Noordvaal Market Agency	De Winnaar H.P	R	2,563.47
Noordvaal Market Agency	Stallard Farms	R	5,250.20
Noordvaal Market Agency	Magveggie Dot	R	317.27
Noordvaal Market Agency	Dynamic Service	R	16,121.57
Noordvaal Market Agency	Dynamic Transport	R	-
Noordvaal Market Agency	Louwman Farms	R	11,119.27
Noordvaal Market Agency	vd Walt P.J	R	23,284.06
Noordvaal Market Agency	Van Staden J	R	858.35
Noordvaal Market Agency	Fresh Veg	R	1,674.73
Noordvaal Market Agency	JLMC Boerdery	R	8,396.10
Noordvaal Market Agency	De Jager I.i	R	38,349.73
Noordvaal Market Agency	Geelhaak boerdery	R	794.04
Noordvaal Market Agency	Thebah M	R	2,547.11
Noordvaal Market Agency	Boikhutso T	R	127.58
Noordvaal Market Agency	Khomansani A.V	R	365.57
Noordvaal Market Agency	Polopat Packers	R	1,263.56
<b>Noordvaal Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>113,032.61</b>
Pula Nala Market Agency	Makushu K	R	227.22
Pula Nala Market Agency	Mulweli M	R	504.56
<b>Pula Nala Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>731.78</b>
<b>RSA Johannesburg Market Agency</b>	Mpondo p	R	92.54
<b>RSA Johannesburg Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>92.54</b>
<b>RSA TShwane Market Agency</b>	Srydom Wessels	R	25.09
<b>RSA TShwane Market Agency</b>	Tswale M.A	R	299.02
<b>RSA TShwane Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>324.11</b>
<b>Samuels &amp; Sons Market Agents</b>	Unknown	R	6,673.38
<b>Samuels &amp; Sons Market Agents Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>6,673.38</b>
<b>Tshwane Green Market Agency</b>	Papane G	R	538.54
<b>Tshwane Green Market Agency</b>	Mohosi T	R	132.90
<b>Tshwane Green Market Agency</b>	Uzania Aquaparl	R	107.18
<b>Tshwane Green Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>778.62</b>
<b>Wenpro Durban Market Agency</b>	Affrifresh	R	162.02
<b>Wenpro Durban Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>162.02</b>
<b>Wenpro Johannesburg Market Agency</b>	Munyai .E	R	203.77
<b>Wenpro Johannesburg Market Agency</b>	Mudau J	R	120.99
<b>Wenpro Johannesburg Market Agency</b>	Rabamukwa R	R	50.31
<b>Wenpro Johannesburg Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>375.07</b>
<b>WL Ochse Market Agency</b>	Comalie Trin	R	1,188.78
<b>WL Ochse Market Agency</b>	Riverwalk Trading	R	1,551.44
<b>WL Ochse Market Agency Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>2,740.22</b>
<b>Grand Total</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>210,689.83</b>



**BOARD NOTICE 39 OF 2018****HEALTH PROFESSIONS COUNCIL OF SOUTH AFRICA****HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT, 1974 (ACT NO. 56 OF 1974)****ETHICAL RULES OF CONDUCT FOR PRACTITIONERS REGISTERED UNDER THE HEALTH PROFESSIONS ACT, 1974: AMENDMENT**

The Health Professions Council of South Africa intends, under section 49 read with section 61A (2) of the Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act No. 56 Of 1974) and in consultation with the professional board for speech, language, and hearing, to make the rules in the schedule.

Interested persons are invited to submit any substantiated comments or representations in writing on the proposed amendments to the Registrar, Health Professions Council of South Africa, P.O. Box 205, Pretoria 0001 (for the attention of the General Manager: Professional Boards) within three months from date of publication of this Notice.

**SCHEDULE****Definitions**

1. In these rules “**the Ethical Rules of Conduct**” means the Ethical rules of conduct for practitioners registered under the Health Professions Act, 1974 published under Government Notice No. R. 717 of 04 August 2006, as amended by Government Notice Nos. R. 68 of 02 February 2009, R. 654 of 30 July 2010, and Board Notice No. 26 of 01 March and any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the rules shall have that meaning, unless the context otherwise indicates.

**Amendment of Annexure 8 of the Ethical Rules of Conduct**

2. Annexure 8 of the Ethical Rules of Conduct is hereby amended by –
  - (a) the substitution for rule 3 of the following rule:



**"3. Performance of professional acts by dispensing optician**

- (a) A dispensing optician shall not dispense in any way spectacles to any person except on a prescription written and signed by a medical practitioner or an optometrist: Provided that this rule shall not apply to the repair or replacement of such spectacles or lenses or frames for such spectacles.
  - (b) Notwithstanding rule 8, a dispensing optician shall not employ an Optometrist."
- (b) the addition of the following rule:

**"5. Performance of the professional acts by an orthoptist**

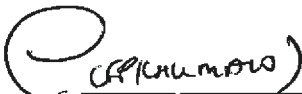
An orthoptist shall -

- (1) only undertake orthoptic acts falling within the scope of practice of orthoptists under the direction and control of a registered optometrist or ophthalmologist; and
  - (2) not apply medicines or surgery in the treatment of any person."
- (c) the addition of the following rules:

**"6. Online sale of Spectacles**

A practitioner registered under the ambit of the professional board for Optometry and Dispensing Opticians may sell spectacles online provided that:

- (1) he or she has a physical practice where confirmation, verifications, fittings and adjustments can be made;
- (2) the sale shall only be limited to frame selection and pre-ordering of lenses (Single Vision only); and
- (3) the actual dispensing shall take place at a physical practice.

  
\_\_\_\_\_

**ADV PHELELANI KHUMALO** 22/02/2018  
**ACTING REGISTRAR**





Printed by and obtainable from the Government Printer, Bosman Street, Private Bag X85, Pretoria, 0001  
Contact Centre Tel: 012-748 6200. eMail: [info.egazette@gpw.gov.za](mailto:info.egazette@gpw.gov.za)  
Publications: Tel: (012) 748 6053, 748 6061, 748 6065